

(19) Europäisches Patentamt  
European Patent Office  
Office européen des brevets



(11) EP 1 088 828 A2

(12)

## EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

(43) Date of publication:  
04.04.2001 Bulletin 2001/14

(51) Int Cl.7: C07H 17/08, A61K 31/7048,  
A61P 31/04, A61P 33/02

(21) Application number: 00308487.8

(22) Date of filing: 27.09.2000

(84) Designated Contracting States:  
AT BE CH CY DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU  
MC NL PT SE

Designated Extension States:  
AL LT LV MK RO SI

(30) Priority: 29.09.1999 US 156554 P

(71) Applicant: Pfizer Products Inc.  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)

(72) Inventors:

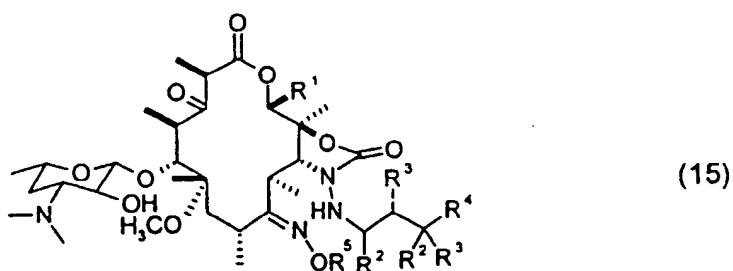
• Kaneko, Takushi  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)

• McLaughlin, Robert William  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)  
• McMillen, William Thomas  
Fishers Indiana 46032 (US)  
• Ripin, David Harold Brown  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)  
• Vanerplas, Brian Clement  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)

(74) Representative: McMunn, Watson Palmer et al  
Pfizer Limited  
Patents Department  
Ramsgate Road  
Sandwich, Kent CT13 9NJ (GB)

### (54) Synthesis of carbamate ketolide antibiotics

(57) The invention relates to a method of preparing a macrolide antibiotic of the formula



wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> are defined above. These antibiotics are useful as antibacterial and antiprotozoal agents in mammals, including man, as well as in fish and birds. The invention also includes novel compounds made by the preparation of the macrolide antibiotic.

EP 1 088 828 A2

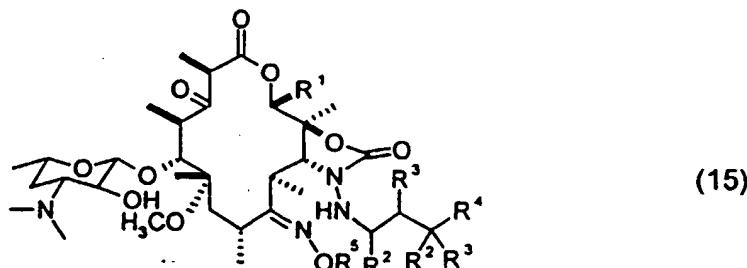
**Description**

[0001] This invention relates to a preparation of macrolide antibiotics that are useful as antibacterial and antiprotozoal agents in mammals, including man, as well as in fish and birds.

- 5 [0002] Macrolide antibiotics are known to be useful in the treatment of a broad spectrum of bacterial and protozoal infections in mammals, fish and birds. Such antibiotics include various derivatives of erythromycin A such as azithromycin which is commercially available and is referred to in United States patents 4,474,768 and 4,517,359 both of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Other macrolide antibiotics are disclosed and claimed in PCT publication number WO 98/56800, published 12/17/98 which designates the United States, and United States  
10 Provisional Applications 60/111,728 and 60/101,263 corresponding to PCT publication numbers WO 00/34297 and WO 00/17218 published 15/06/00 and 30/03/00 respectively all of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. The new process as described below provides macrolide compounds that possess activity against various bacterial and protozoal infection.

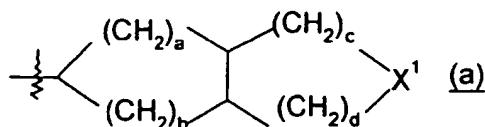
**Summary of the Invention**

[0003] The present invention relates to the process for preparing a compound of the formula



30 wherein:

R¹ is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
35 R¹ is phenyl which may be optionally substituted with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, halo, hydroxyl, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
40 R¹ is formula (a) as shown below:



45 wherein X¹ is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

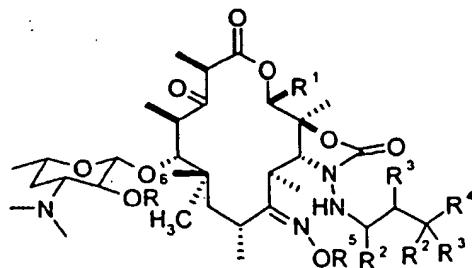
50 R¹ is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl, or halo groups, or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
55 a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to

6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and,  
 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and,  
 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups  
 5 are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, and -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>;  
 10 which comprises treating a compound of the formula

15

20

25



(14)

with a nucleophile or solvolysis to cleave the R<sup>6</sup> protecting group wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>5</sup> are as defined above; and

30 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

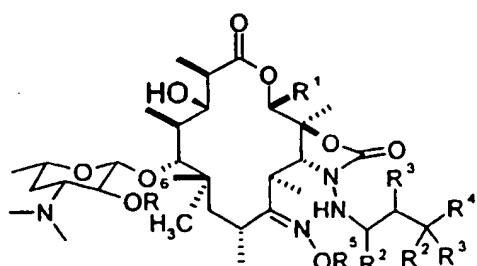
[0004] In one embodiment the R<sup>6</sup> protecting group can be removed by solvolysis in an alcoholic or aqueous solvent with the optional addition of base to accelerate the reaction. In the process of preparing a compound of formula 15, examples of suitable alcoholic solvents include but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol and tert-butanol. Examples of bases include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium fluoride and barium hydroxide.

[0005] In addition the R<sup>6</sup> protecting group can be removed with a nucleophile, including, but not limited to, ammonium hydroxide, monoalkyl amine, dialkyl-amine, alkane thiol or hydroxide. Useable solvents include, but are not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methyl pyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran ethylacetate, and toluene. Preferably the deprotection is run in methanol with the addition of potassium carbonate at room temperature.

[0006] According to the invention compound 14 maybe prepared by the oxidation of a compound of the formula

45

50



(13)

55

under Swern conditions wherein:

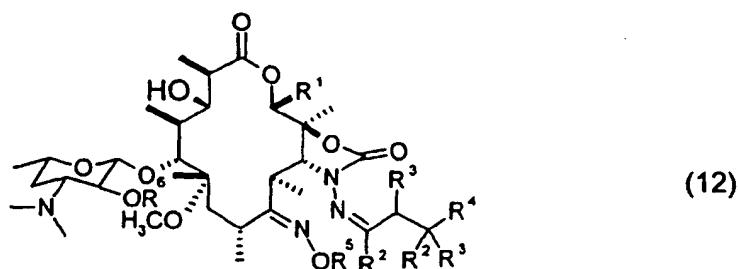
R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>6</sup> are defined above.

[0007] Preferably, the Swern conditions are selected from the following:

(a) In an inert solvent including, but not limited to, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, and tetrachloroethane; dimethylsulfoxide is preactivated with activating agents including, but not limited to, oxalyl chloride, trifluoroacetic anhydride, sulfonyl chloride, and thionyl chloride; followed by addition of the compound 13. Trialkylamine base is added after a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours at a temperature range from about -80°C to 50°C;

5 (b) Compound 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed in one of said inert solvents, followed by addition of said activating agent and then followed by the addition of trialkylamine base at a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours. This occurs at a temperature range from about -80°C to 50°C. Preferably the reaction is run in methylene chloride at about -5° to 5°C, where the compound of the formula 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed and activated by trifluoroacetic anhydride. This is followed by triethylamine about two hours later. The reaction is then 10 warmed to room temperature.

[0008] According to the invention compound 13 may be prepared by the reduction of a compound of the formula



25 wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>6</sup> are defined above,

with a metal hydride reducing agent including, but not limited to, sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride under acidic conditions.

30 [0009] The solvent includes, but is not limited to, acetic acid, acetonitrile, or alcoholic solvent with an acid additive such as acetic acid. The alcoholic solvent includes, but is not limited to, ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, or tertbutanol.

Preferably the reaction is run at room temperature in acetic acid with an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

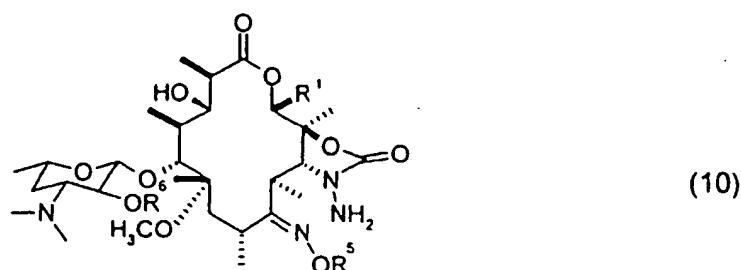
[0010] According to the invention, compound 12 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula



45 wherein:

R<sup>2</sup> to R<sup>4</sup> are defined above; and,

C and D together form oxo, or where C and D are independently hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> acyloxy, with a compound of formula



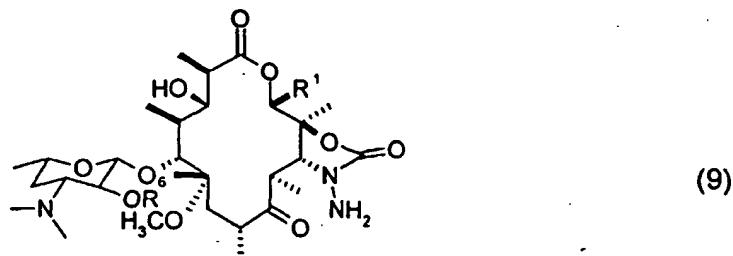
wherein:

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above,  
in inert solvent under neutral or acidic conditions.

- 5 [0011] Examples of acidic conditions include the use of an acid additive including, but is not limited to, acetic and formic acid and the solvent includes, but is not limited to water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, dichloroethane, ethylacetate and toluene. The reaction can also be run under neutral conditions by heating the reaction in one of the above solvents without an acid additive  
10 between about 80°C to 110°C. Preferably the reaction is run in acetic acid or ethanol with acetic acid at about room temperature.

[0012] According to the invention, compound 10 maybe prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

15



20

25

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above,  
with a reagent of the formula

30



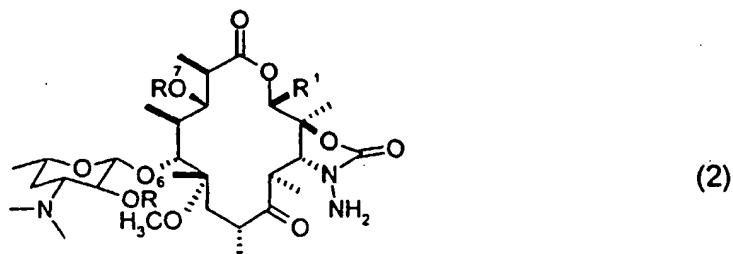
35

as its free base, or acid addition salt, with or without added base. The base includes, but is not limited to, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine bases, or dimethylaminopyridine in a polar solvent including, but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide and dimethylsulfoxide. The reaction is run at elevated temperatures between about 40°C and 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run with an excess of methoxylamine hydrochloride in isopropanol at about 80°C to 85°C.

40

[0013] According to the invention, compound 9 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula

45

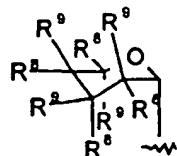


50

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above; and,  
R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

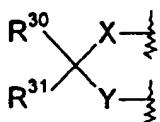
5



wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and,

R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

15



20

wherein:

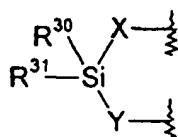
X = O or S

Y = O or S

R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form;

25

30

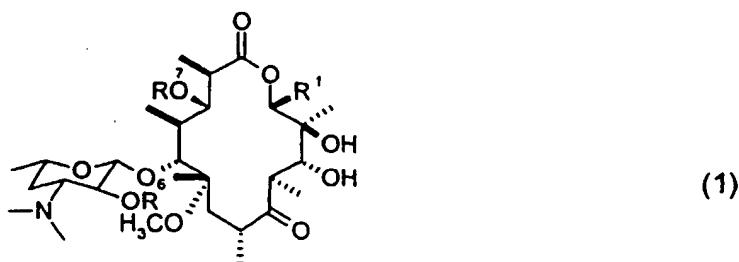


and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, with or without water, in a polar solvent including, but not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethyl formamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, and formic acid. The acid includes, but is not limited to, hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic, tosic, triflic, or trifluoroacetic acid and the temperature is about -25°C to 100°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in methanol with 12N HCl at about 30 to 40°C.

40 [0014] According to the invention, compound 2 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula

45

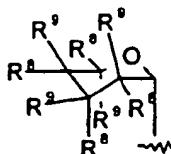
50



wherein:

55 R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are as defined above and,  
R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

5



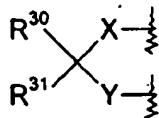
wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub>O-

10 alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>;

and/or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

10

15



20

wherein:

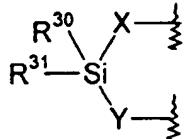
X = O or S

Y = O or S

R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

25

30



35

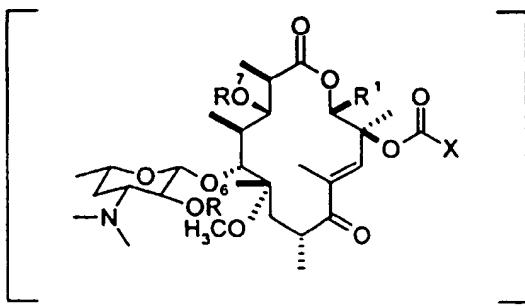
and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl,

with a carboxyl source including, but not limited to, carbonyl diimidazole (CDI) phosgene, triphosgene, carbonyl bis-benzotriazole, carbonyl bishydroxybenzotriazole or carbonyl bis-1,2,4-triazole and a base including, but not limited to, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), 1,2-dimethyl-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, sodium hexamethyldisilazane, lithium dissopropylamide, or potassium hexamethyldisilazane in a range of inert solvents followed by treatment with hydrazine. The inert solvents include, but are not limited to, isopropylether, dimethyl formamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxymethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, or dichloroethane. The reaction is monitored for the formation of an intermediate of formula

45

50

55



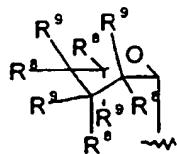
(5)

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are as defined above and,

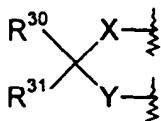
R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

5



- 10 wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, -OC(O)X or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

15



20

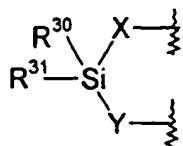
wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

- 25 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

30



35

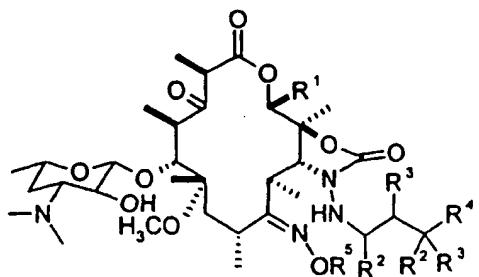
- and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl; and,  
X is imidazole, 1,2,4-triazole, hydroxybenzotriazole, or benzotriazole.

[0015] Preferably, the reaction is run with CDI and DBU in ether solvent, and most preferably in tetrahydrofuran, with or without isopropylether.

40 [0016] Once conversion to intermediate 5 is complete, hydrazine or hydrazine hydrate is added to the reaction between about -78°C to 50°C. Preferably hydrazine is added at about 10°C to 20°C.

[0017] In a further aspect of this invention, a compound of formula

45



(15)

55

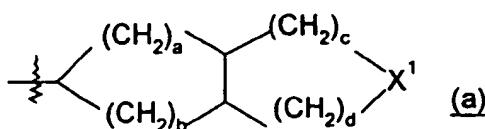
wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be replaced by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-

branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be replaced by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxyl C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl and halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be replaced by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

5 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
R<sup>1</sup> has a formula (a) as shown below

10



15

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

20 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and

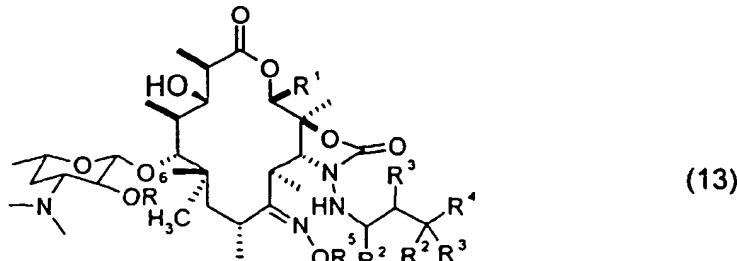
25 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

30 R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>;

35 may be prepared by the oxidation of a compound of the formula

40

45



50

under Swern conditions wherein:

55 R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>5</sup> are defined above and  
R<sup>6</sup> is hydrogen.

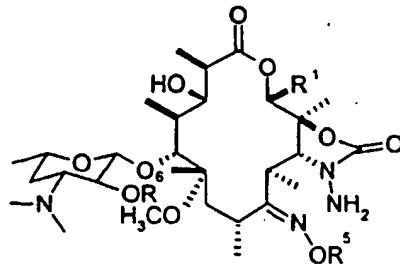
[0018] Preferably, the Swern conditions are selected from the following:

(a) In an inert solvent including, but not limited to, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, and tetrachloroethane; dimethylsulfoxide is preactivated with activating agents including, but not limited to, oxalyl chloride, trifluoroacetic anhydride, sulfonyl chloride, and thionyl chloride; followed by addition of a compound of the formula 13. Trialkylamine base is added after a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours at a temperature range from about -80°C to 50°C;

5 (b) Compound 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed in one of said inert solvents, followed by addition of said activating agent and then followed by the addition of trialkylamine base at a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours. This occurs at a temperature range from about -80°C to 50°C. Preferably the reaction is run in methylene chloride at about -5°C to 5°C, wherein the compound of the formula 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed and activated by trifluoroacetic anhydride. This is followed by triethylamine about two hours later. The reaction is then warmed to room temperature.

10

[0019] In a further aspect of this invention, a compound of formula

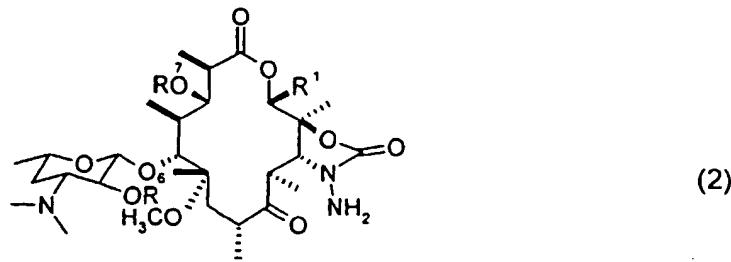


25 wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are defined above; and

R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl and wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; is prepared by reaction of a compound of formula

30

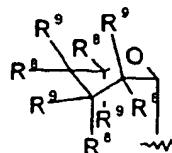


45 wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above; and,

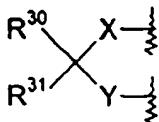
R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

46



55 wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

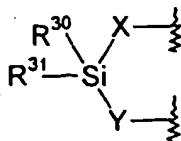


wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

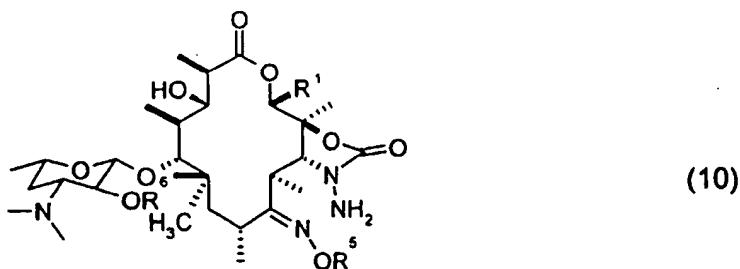


20 and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl,  
with a reagent of the formula



wherein R<sup>5</sup> is defined above, as its acid addition salt, with or without added base. The base includes, but is not limited to, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine bases, or dimethylaminopyridine in a polar solvent including, but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide and dimethylsulfoxide. The reaction is run at elevated temperatures between about 40°C and 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run with an excess of methoxylamine hydrochloride and one equivalent of 2,6-lutidine in tert-butanol at about 75°C to 85°C.

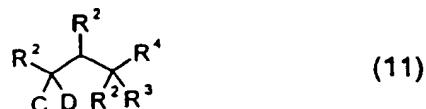
35 [0020] In a further aspect of this invention, a compound of formula 13 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula 10



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above,

50 with a compound of formula



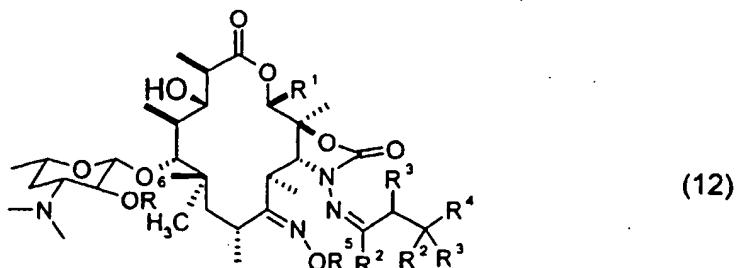
wherein:

R<sup>2</sup> to R<sup>4</sup> are defined above; and

C and D together form oxo, or where C and D are independently hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> acyloxy, in a variety of solvents under acidic conditions.

- 5 [0021] The solvents include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. Acetic acid can be used as an additive, solvent or co-solvent. Preferably, the reaction is run in acetic acid or ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature. The reaction is monitored for conversion to an intermediate of formula 12. The intermediate of formula 12 is treated with a metal hydride reducing agent including, but not limited to, sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride. Preferably intermediate 12 is treated with an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride at room temperature to produce a compound of formula 13.
- 10 [0022] In a further aspect of this invention, a compound of formula 12

15



20

25

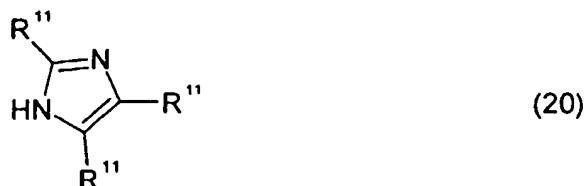
wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>6</sup> are defined above,

may be prepared by a reaction of a compound of formula

30

35

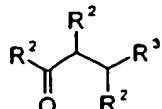


wherein:

- 40 each R<sup>11</sup> is independently selected from H, -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl-NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl-NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl, alkoxy, or alkanoyl groups may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>;
- 45 with a compound of formula

50

55

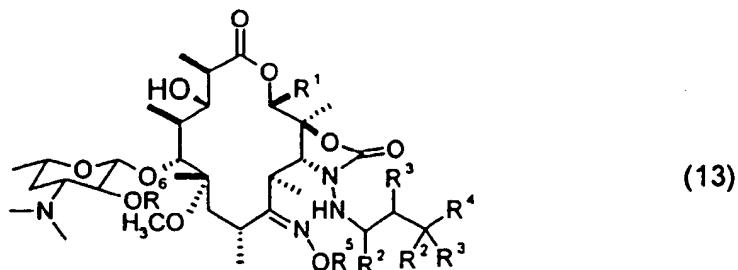


wherein:

R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are defined above, in an alcoholic solvents under acidic conditions.

[0023] The alcohol solvent includes, but is not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol or tert-butanol and the acid includes, but is not limited to, acetic or formic acid. The reaction is monitored for the formation of the intermediate of formula 11 at which point a compound of formula 10 above is added. Preferably, the reaction is run in ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature.

5 [0024] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>5</sup> are defined above and

20 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula

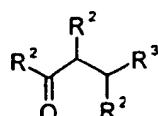


as its free base or acid addition salt

wherein:

R<sup>11</sup> is defined above,

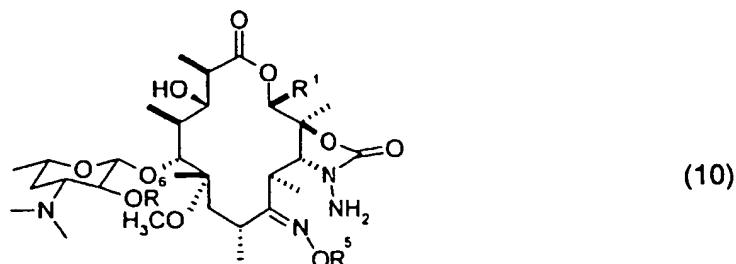
35 with a compound of formula



45 wherein:

R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are defined above

and a compound of formula



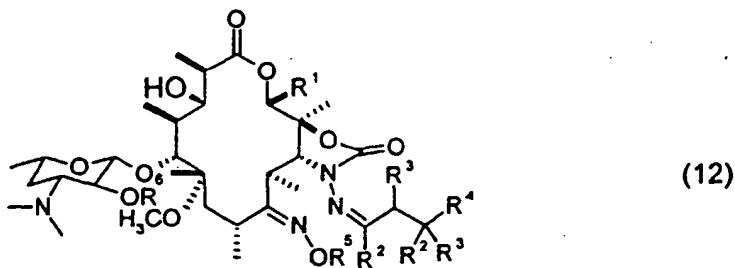
under acidic conditions.

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above. Acids that are used as additives or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and solvents include, but are not limited to, acetic acid, formic acid, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, or tetrahydrofuran. The reaction is monitored for the formation of an intermediate of the formula 12 above, at which point it is treated with a metal hydride reducing agent such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride. Preferably, the reaction is run at room temperature in acetic acid with or without dichloromethane as a co-solvent, using an excess of the compound of formula 20 as its bishydrochloric acid salt, and is followed by an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride after formation of the compound of formula 12.

10

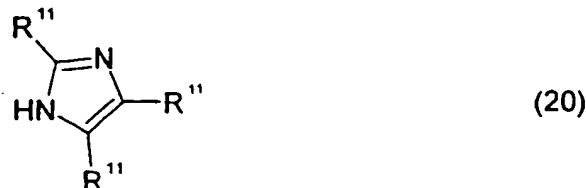
[0025] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula



wherein:

25 R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>6</sup> are defined above,

may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula

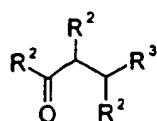


as its free base or acid addition salt

wherein:

40 R<sup>11</sup> is defined above,

with a compound of formula

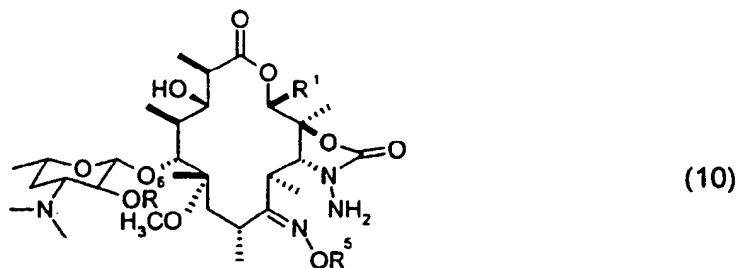


wherein:

50 R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are defined above,

and a compound of formula

55



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above, under acidic conditions. Acids that are used as additives or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and solvents include, but are not limited to, acetic acid, formic acid, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, or tetrahydrofuran.

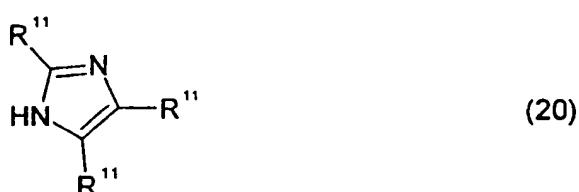
[0026] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula



wherein:

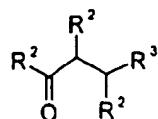
R<sup>2</sup> to R<sup>4</sup> are defined above; and

C and D together form oxo, or where C and D are independently hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> acyloxy, may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula



wherein:

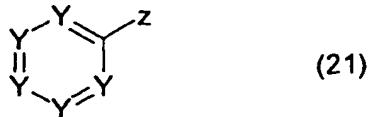
R<sup>11</sup> is defined above,  
with a compound of formula



wherein:

R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are defined above, in a variety of alcoholic solvents under acidic conditions. The solvents include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, or tert-butanol. Acids that can be used as an additive or co-solvent include, but are not limited to acetic and formic acid. Preferably the reaction is run in ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature.

[0027] In another aspect of the invention a compound of formula 20 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula



wherein:

each Y is independently selected from N or CR<sup>12</sup>; and

each R<sup>12</sup> is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and,

Z is chlorine, bromine, or iodine,  
with a compound of formula

15



wherein

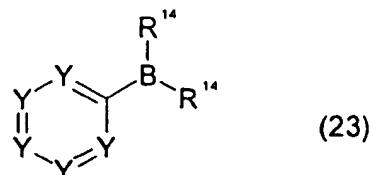
R<sup>11</sup> is defined above, and

25 R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

30 [0028] The reaction is run in the presence of a palladium catalyst including, but not limited to, palladium (II) acetate and a trialkyl or triarylphosphine including, but not limited to triphenylphosphine, tri-t-butyl-phosphine, or tri-o-tolylphosphine. In the reaction the base includes but is not limited to cesium carbonate or potassium carbonate and the solvent includes, but is not limited to, dimethylformamide or N-methylpyrrolidinone at a temperature of about 25°C to 200°C. Preferably the reaction is run with benzylimidazole and 3-bromopyridine in dimethylformamide at reflux with palladium (II) acetate, triphenyl phosphine and cesium carbonate.

35 [0029] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula 20 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

40



45

wherein:

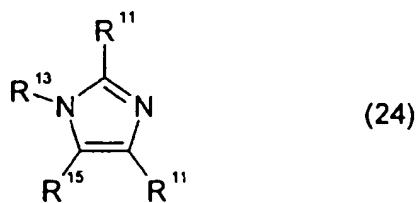
R<sup>14</sup> is selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of the alkyl or alkoxy may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

Y is defined above,

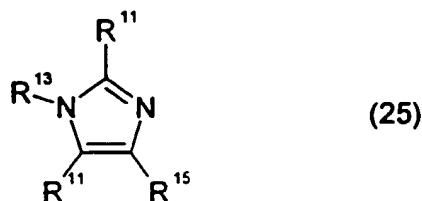
with a compound of formula

50

55



or

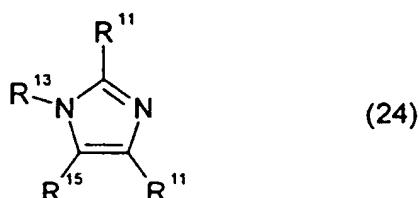


wherein:

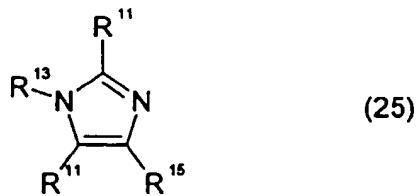
 $R^{11}$  and  $R^{13}$  are defined above, and, $R^{15}$  is selected from chlorine, bromine or iodine.

15 [0030] The reaction is run in the presence of an inert solvent, base and a palladium catalyst at a temperature at about 25°C to 125°C for about 30 minutes to 48 hours. The base includes, but is not limited to, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium fluoride, and barium hydroxide. Suitable palladium catalysts include, but are not limited to, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), dichlorobis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II), palladium(II) acetate, allylpalladium chloride dimer, and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0). Optionally the reaction medium could also contain a triarylphosphine or trialkylphosphine, examples of which include, but are not limited to, triphenylphosphine, tri-(*o*-tolyl)phosphine and tri-*t*-butylphosphine and could also contain tetrabutylammonium iodide. The inert solvent includes, but is not limited to tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, and dimethoxyethane. Preferably, the reaction is run at reflux in dimethylformamide with potassium hydroxide, tetrakis (triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), and tetrabutylammonium iodide.

20 [0031] In another aspect a compound of formula 20 may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula



or



wherein:

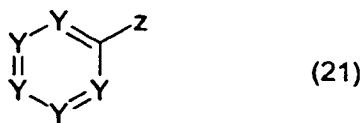
 $R^{11}$ ,  $R^{13}$  and  $R^{15}$  are defined above,

50 with reagents including, but not limited to,

(a) alkylmagnesium chloride, bromide or iodide, where the alkyl includes, but is not limited to, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, or *t*-butyl, or magnesium(0), followed by treatment with zinc chloride, zinc bromide, or zinc iodide, or  
 (b) with reagents such as alkylzinc chloride, alkyl zinc bromide or alkylzinc iodide, where the alkyl includes, but is not limited to methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, or *t*-butyl or zinc(0) and zinc chloride, zinc bromide, or zinc iodide

55 followed by reaction with a compound of formula

5



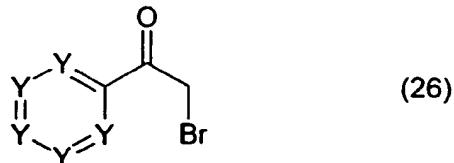
wherein:

Y and Z are defined above,

in the presence of a palladium catalyst including, but not limited to, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), dichlorobis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II), palladium(II) acetate, allylpalladium chloride dimer, and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0). The reaction medium may optionally also contain a triarylphosphine or trialkylphosphine including, but are not limited to, triphenylphosphine, tri(o-tolyl)phosphine and tri-*t*-butylphosphine. The inert solvent includes, but is not limited to, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, and dimethoxyethane. Preferably, the reaction is run in tetrahydrofuran, with ethylmagnesium bromide followed by zinc chloride, followed by the compound of formula 21 and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), and the reaction is heated from about room temperature to 70°C.

[0032] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula 20 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

25



as its free base or acid addition salt

wherein:

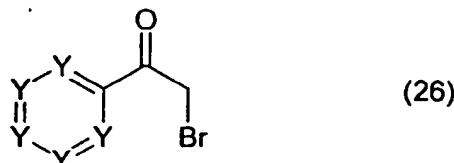
Y is defined above

with formamide at the elevated temperature of about 120°C to 220°C. Preferably the reaction is run in formamide at about 150°C to 170°C.

35

[0033] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula 20 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

40



45

as its free base or acid addition salt

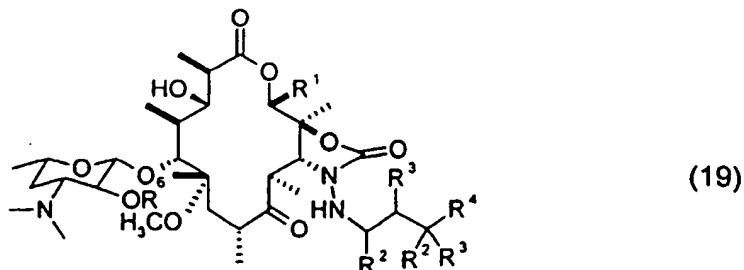
wherein:

Y is defined above

with formamidine acetate in a polar solvent with or without added base at temperatures between about 25°C to 200°C. Examples of polar solvents include, but are not limited to, dimethylformamide, dimethylacetamide, acetonitrile, formamide, and dimethylsulfoxide. Examples of bases include, but are not limited to, potassium acetate and sodium acetate. Preferably, the reaction is run in dimethylformamide with potassium acetate at about 60°C to 70°C.

55

[0034] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula 13 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are defined above,

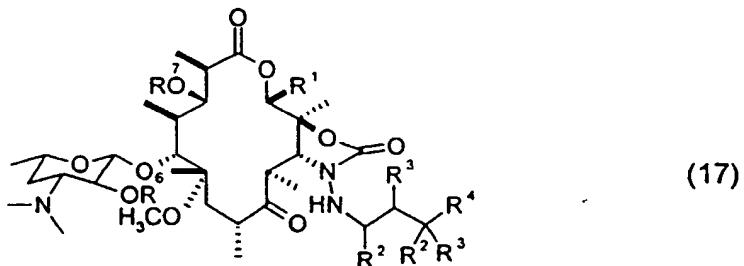
15 with a reagent of the formula as its free base or acid addition salt,



20 wherein R<sup>5</sup> is defined above,

with or without the addition of a base. This reaction includes run with a base including, but not limited to, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine base, or dimethylaminopyridine in a polar solvent including but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile dimethylacetamide and dimethyl sulfoxide. The reaction is usually run at elevated temperatures between about 40°C to 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run with an excess of methoxylamine hydrochloride in isopropanol at about 75°C to 85°C.

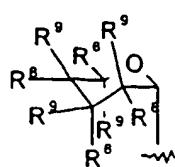
[0035] According to the invention compound 19 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula



40 wherein

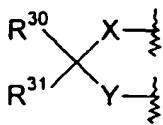
R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>6</sup> are as defined above and,

R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula



wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, -OC(O)X or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of the alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup> and

55 R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

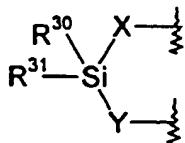


wherein:

X = O or S

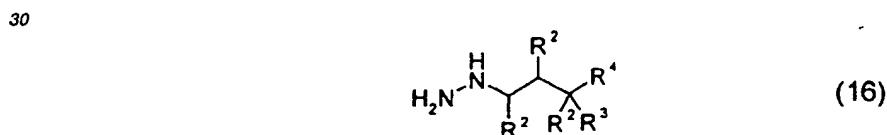
Y = O or S

10 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form



20 and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl; with acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic, tosic, triflic, or trifluoroacetic acid, with or without water, in a polar solvent including but not limited to water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, or formic acid over a range of temperatures from about -25°C to 100°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in methanol with 12N HCl at about 30°C to 40°C.

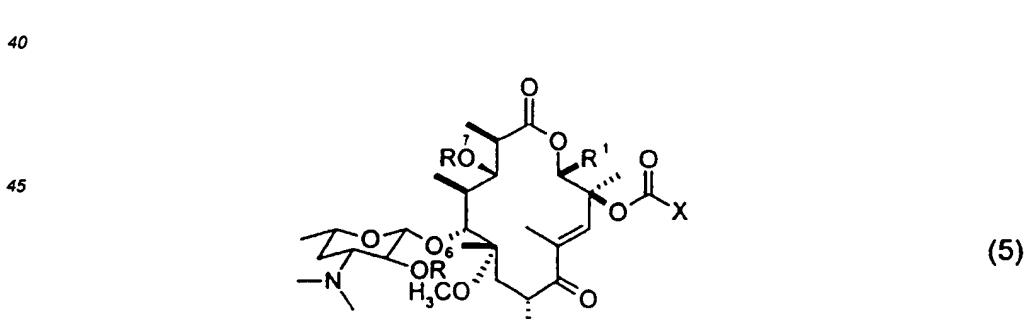
25 [0036] According to the invention, a compound of formula 17 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula



35 wherein:

R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, and R<sup>4</sup> are defined above,

with a compound of formula



55 wherein:

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>7</sup> are as defined above, and

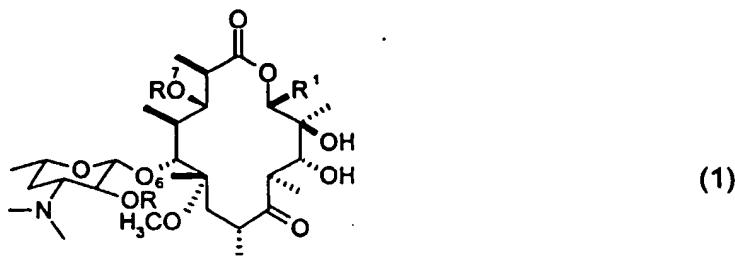
X is imidazole, 1,2,4-triazole, hydroxybenzotriazole, or benzotriazole,

in an inert solvent including, but not limited to, isopropylether, dimethyl formamide N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethyl sulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. The reaction is run at a temperature between 0°C to 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is

run in acetonitrile at reflux.

[0037] According to the invention, a compound of formula (5) may be prepared by reacting a compound of formula

5



10

15

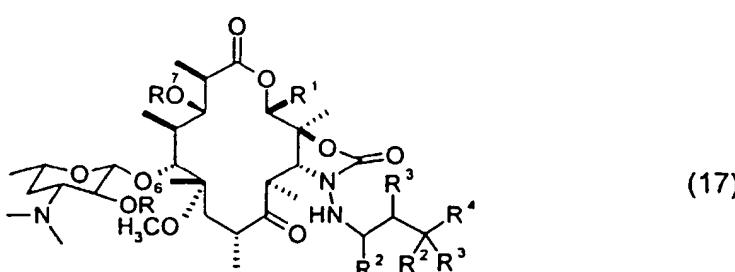
wherein:

R1, R6 and R7 are as defined above,  
 with a carboxyl source including, but not limited to carbonyl diimidazole (CDI) phosgene, triphosgene, carbonyl bis-benzotriazole, carbonyl bishydroxybenzotriazole or carbonyl bis-1,2,4-triazole and a base including, but not limited to, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), 1,2-dimethyl-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, sodium hexamethyldisilazane, lithium diisopropylamide, or potassium hexamethyldisilazane in a range of inert solvents. The inert solvent includes, but is not limited to, isopropylether, dimethyl formamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxythane, dicholoromethane, tetrachloroethane, or dichloroethane. Preferably, the reaction is run with CDI and DBU in ether solvent, and most preferably in tetrahydrofuran, with or without isopropylether.

25

[0038] In another aspect of the invention a compound of formula (13) may be prepared by a reaction of a compound of the formula

30



35

40

wherein:

R1 to R4, R6 and R7 are as defined above,  
 with a reagent of the formula

45

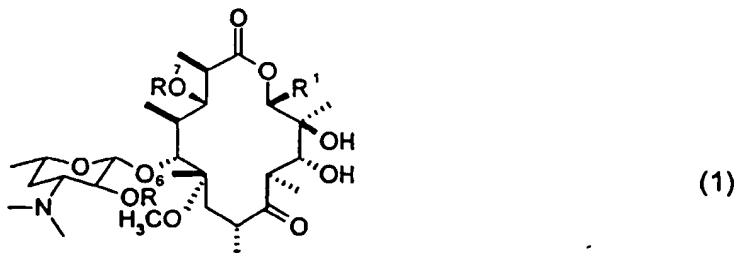


wherein R5 is defined above,

as its acid addition salt, with or without a base including, but not limited to, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine, or dimethylaminopyridine in a polar solvent including, but not limited to methanol, ethanol isopropyl, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, and dimethylacetamide, or dimethylsulfoxide at an elevated temperature between about 40 and 150°C. Preferably the reaction is run with an excess methoxylamine hydrochloride and about one equivalent of 2,6-lutidine in t-butanol at about 70°C to 90°C.

55

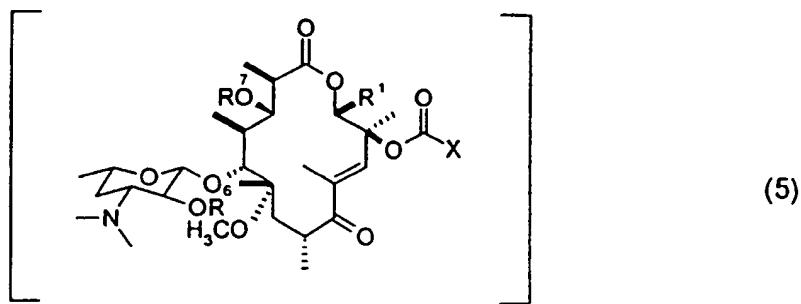
[0039] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula 17 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>7</sup> are as defined above,

with a carbonyl source including but not limited to, carbonyl diimidazole (CDI) phosgene, triphosgene, carbonyl bis-benzotriazole, carbonyl bishydroxybenzotriazole or carbonyl bis-1,2,4-triazole and a base including, but not limited to 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), 1,2-dimethyl-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, sodium hexamethyldisilazane, lithium diisopropylamide, or potassium hexamethyldisilazane in a range of inert solvents followed by reaction with a compound of formula (16). The inert solvent includes, but is not limited to, isopropylether, dimethyl formamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxythane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, or dichloroethane. Preferably, the reaction is run with CDI and DBU in acetonitrile. The reaction is monitored for the formation of intermediate of formula



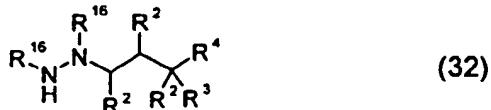
wherein:

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, X, and R<sup>7</sup> are as defined above.

[0040] Once conversion to formula 5 is complete, a compound of formula 16 is added to the reaction between about

40 0°C and 150°C. Preferably the addition is done between about 25°C and 75°C.

[0041] According to the invention, a compound of formula 16 may prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula



wherein:

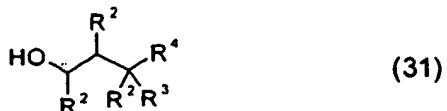
R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, and R<sup>4</sup> are defined above; and,

R<sup>16</sup> is —C(O)OR<sup>5</sup>,

under conditions suitable to remove the R<sup>16</sup> protecting group. Where R<sup>16</sup> is tert-butylcarbamate (BOC), the reaction is with acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic acids, tosic acid, triflic acid, or trifluoroacetic acid, with or without water, in a variety of polar or nonpolar solvents including, but not limited to water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, formic acid, toluene, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane over a range of temperatures from about 25°C to 200°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in methanol with 6N HCl at about 40°C to 60°C.

[0042] According to the invention, a compound of formula 32 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

5

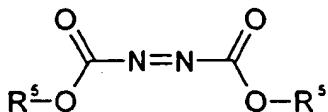


10

wherein:

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ , and  $R^4$  are defined above,  
with a trialkyl or triaryl phosphine and a reagent of formula

15



20

in an inert solvent,

wherein:

$R^5$  is defined above,

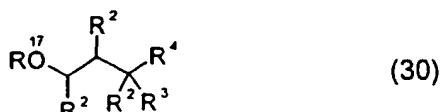
25

[0043] Examples of phosphines include, but are not limited to, triphenylphosphine, trimethylphosphine, tri-butylphosphine, or tributylphosphine. Examples of inert solvents include, but are not limited to, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, acetonitrile, or tetrahydrofuran. Preferably, the reaction is run with triphenylphosphine and ditert-butylazadicarboxylate in tetrahydrofuran from about 0°C to room temperature.

30

[0044] According to the invention, a compound of formula 31 may be prepared by the deprotection of a compound of formula

35



40

wherein:

$R^2$ ,  $R^3$ , and  $R^4$  are defined above; and,

$R^{17}$  is  $Si(R^{10})_3$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^6$ , or  $C(O)OR^5$ ,

under conditions appropriate to remove the alcohol protecting group  $R^{17}$ .

45

a) When  $R^{17}$  is trisubstitutedsilyl, disubstituted ketal, or monosubstituted acetal, the reaction is with acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic acids, tosic acid, triflic acid, or trifluoroacetic acid; or if

50

b)  $R^{17}$  is trisubstitutedsilyl, the reaction is with flouride sources including but not limited to, tetrabutylammonium flouride, hydroflouric acid, HF-pyridine, potassium flouride, cesium flouride, and sodium flouride,

55

with or without water, in a polar or nonpolar solvents including, but not limited to water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, formic acid, toluene, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane over a range of temperatures from about 25°C to 200°C. Preferably,  $R^{17}$  is tert-butyldimethylsilyl and the reaction is run in tetrahydrofuran with tetrabutylammonium flouride.

[0045] When  $R^{17}$  is  $-C(O)OR^5$  or  $R^6$ , the protecting group includes cleaved with a nucleophile.

55

a) solvolysis in alcoholic or aqueous solvent, with the addition of base optional to accelerate the reaction. Examples of alcoholic solvents include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, and tert-butanol. Examples of useable bases include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium carbonate, po-

tassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium flouride, and barium hydroxide, or  
 b) with a nucleophile including but not limited to, ammonium hydroxide, monoalky amine, dialkylamine, alkanethiol, or hydroxide in a solvent including but not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethyl-formamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, dichloroethane, ethylacetate and toluene.

5

[0046] Preferably, this deprotection is run in methanol with the addition of potassium carbonate at room temperature.

10

[0047] According to the invention, a compound of formula 30 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

15



wherein:

20

R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, and R<sup>17</sup> are defined above,

25

with a compound of formula 20 and base in a polar solvent. Examples of bases include, but are not limited to, sodium hydride, potassium tert-butoxide, sodium tert-butoxide, potassium hexamethyldisilazide, sodium hexamethyldisilazide, and lithium diisopropylamide. Examples of solvents include, but are not limited to, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, and dimethylsulfoxide. Preferably, the reaction is run with sodium hydride in dimethylformamide.

30

[0048] According to the invention, a compound of formula 29 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

35



40

wherein:

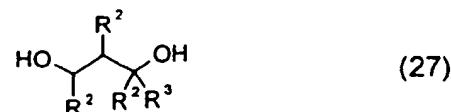
R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, and R<sup>17</sup> are defined above,

45

with a mesylating agent and base in inert solvent. Mesylating agents include, but are not limited to, mesic anhydride, mesyl chloride, and mesyl bromide. Useable bases include, but are not limited to, trialkylamines such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, and dimethylaminopyridine. Examples of inert solvents include, but are not limited to, tetrahydrofuran, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane. Preferably, the reaction is run with mesyl chloride and triethylamine in dichloromethane.

50

[0049] According to the invention, a compound of formula 28 may be prepared by the selective protection of a compound of formula



55

wherein:

R<sup>2</sup>, and R<sup>3</sup> are defined above,

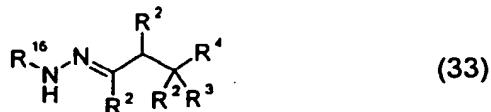
with reagents including but not limited to, trisubstitutedsilyl chloride, trisubstitutedsilyl imidazole, trisubstitutedsilyl triflate, acid chlorides, acid anhydrides, chloroformates, carbonate anhydrides, mixed anhydrides, and isocyanates and a base including but not limited to, imidazole, trialkylamines such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine,

pyridine, lutidine, and dimethylaminopyridine in aprotic solvents including but not limited to, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, toluene, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane. Preferably, the reaction is run with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride and imidazole in dichloromethane at about -5°C to 5°C range.

5

[0050] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula (16) may be prepared by the reduction of a compound of formula

10



15

wherein:

$\text{R}^2$ ,  $\text{R}^3$ ,  $\text{R}^4$ , and  $\text{R}^{16}$  are defined above,

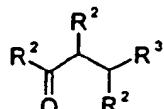
with a metal hydride reducing agent such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride under acidic conditions. The solvent includes, but is not limited to, acetic acid, acetonitrile, or alcoholic solvent with an acid additive such as acetic acid. The alcoholic solvent includes, but is not limited to ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, and tert-butanol. Preferably, the reaction is run at room temperature in acetic acid with an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

20

[0051] According to the invention, a compound of formula (33) includes prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula

25

30



wherein:

$\text{R}^2$  and  $\text{R}^3$  are defined above,

with a reagent of formula

35



wherein:

$\text{R}^{16}$  is defined above

under neutral or acidic conditions.

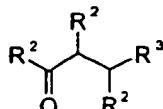
40

[0052] Some representative acids included as additives, solvent, or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents include, but are not limited to water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, dichloroethane, ethylacetate and toluene. Examples of neutral conditions are heating the reaction in solvent without acid additive between about 80°C and 110°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in acetic acid or ethanol with acetic acid at about room temperature.

45

[0053] In another aspect of the invention, a compound of formula 16 may be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

55



wherein:

R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are defined above,  
with reagent of formula

5



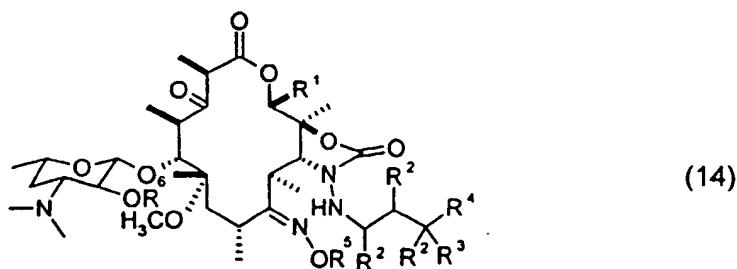
wherein:

R<sup>16</sup> is defined above

- 10 in a variety of solvents under acidic conditions, followed by reduction with a metal hydride reducing agent including sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride under acidic conditions. Some representative acids that may be used as additives, solvent, or co-solvent includes but are not limited to acetic and formic acid, and the solvents include, but are not limited to, acetonitrile, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane.
- 15 Preferably, the reaction is run in acetic acid at about room temperature, followed by reduction with sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

[0054] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

20



25

30

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

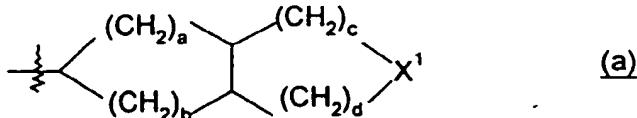
35

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced one to three groups selected independently from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

40

45

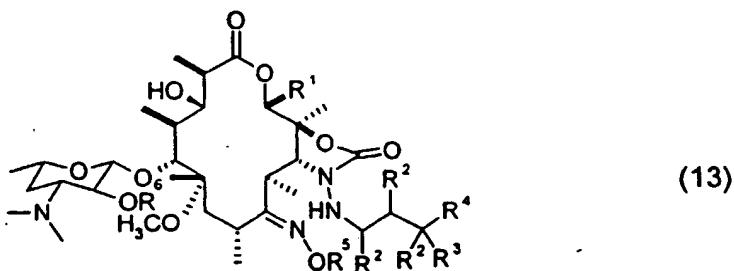


wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

- 50 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated
- 55

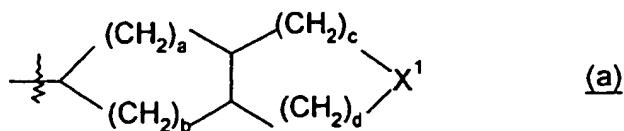
and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and, each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; except that neither R<sup>2</sup> or R<sup>3</sup> can be H when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0055] The invention also includes a compound of the formula



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below



wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms except that R<sup>1</sup> is not

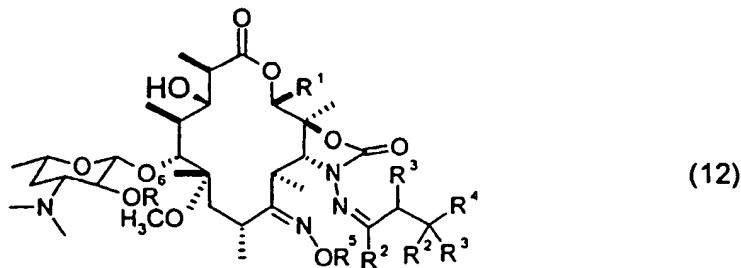
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and

each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except that neither R<sup>2</sup> or R<sup>3</sup> can be H when R1 is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and, each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

5 R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

10 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

15 The invention also relates a compound of the formula

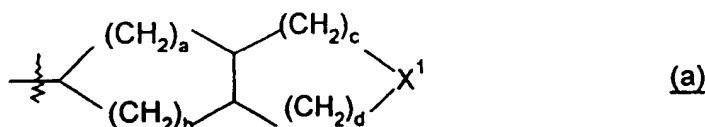


wherein:

30 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

35 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below



45 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; except R<sup>1</sup> can not be -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and

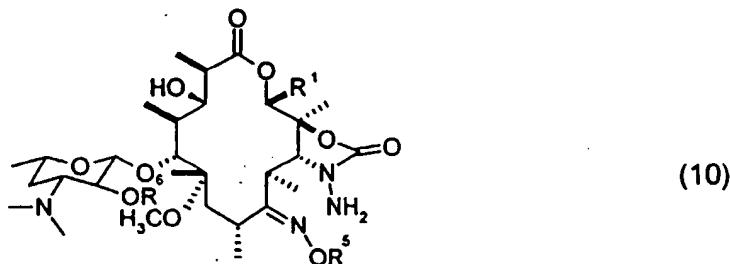
each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except that neither R<sup>2</sup> or R<sup>3</sup> can be H when R1 is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 5 R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 10 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0056] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

15

20

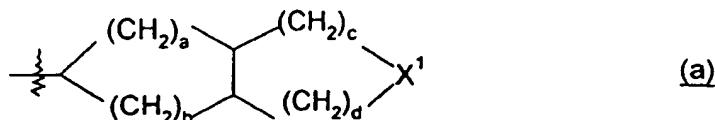
25



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms;  
 30 or R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
 35 R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

40



45

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

50

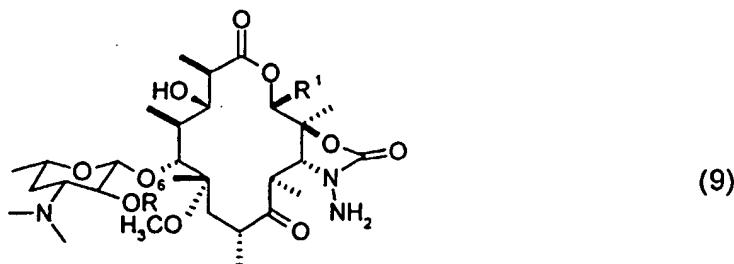
R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms except that R<sup>1</sup> is not -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and

each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and

- each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and
- 5 R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl may be substituted by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and
- 10 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0057] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

15



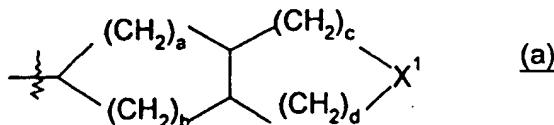
20

25

wherein:

- 30 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or
- 35 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or
- R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

40



45

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

- 50 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms except that R<sup>1</sup> can not -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and
- 55 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>alkyl; and

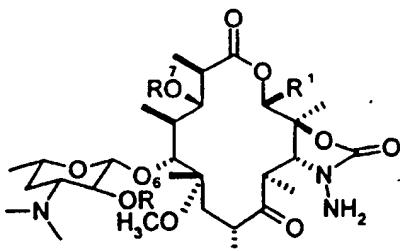
each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
5 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0058] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

10

15

(2)



20

wherein:

25

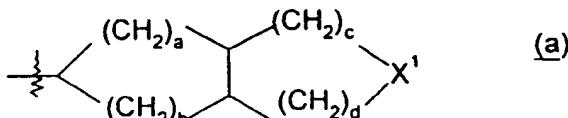
R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

30

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below

35



wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

40

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

50

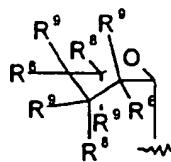
each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

55

R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

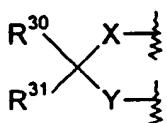
5



10 wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

15



20

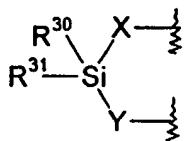
wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

25 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

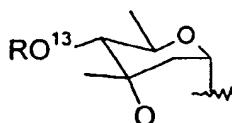
30



35

except that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>7</sup> can not be a radical of the formula

40

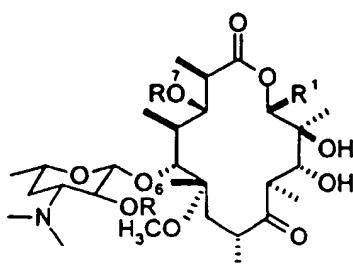


45

[0059] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

50

55



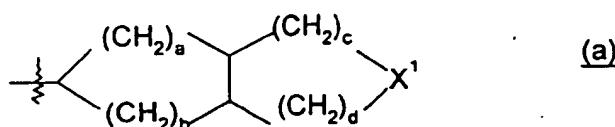
(1)

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

10 R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below



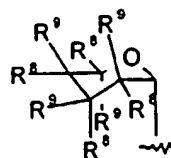
wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

20 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

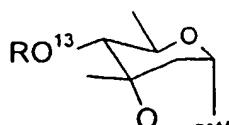
25 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

30 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

35 R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

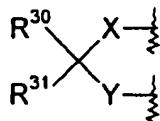


wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; except when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>7</sup> can not be a radical of the formula



wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

5



10

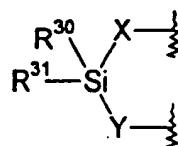
wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

15 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

20

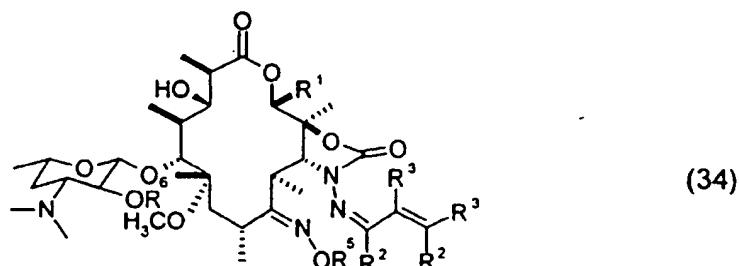


25

and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl.

[0060] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

30



35

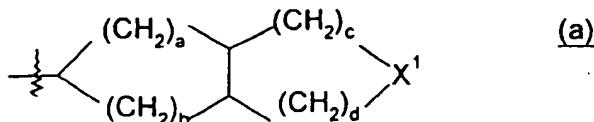
40

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

50

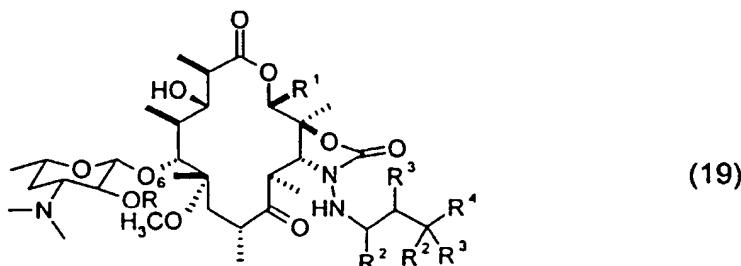
55

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2

and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

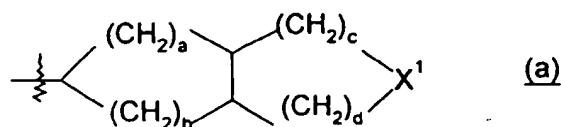
R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; except that R<sup>1</sup> can not be -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, and  
 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and,  
 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>

[0061] The invention also includes a compound of the formula



wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
 R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below



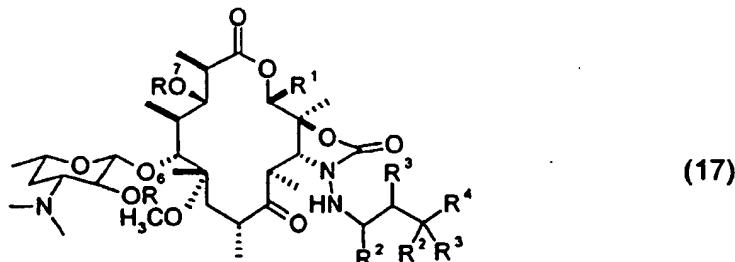
wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing

from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkythio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and  
 10 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except that R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> can not both be H when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 15 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0062] The invention also includes a compound of formula

20

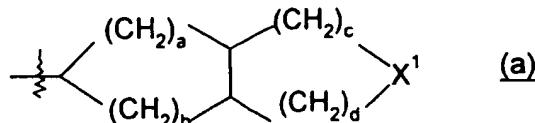


30

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
 35 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
 40 R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

45



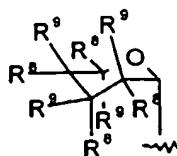
50

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-

5      C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except that neither R<sup>2</sup> nor R<sup>3</sup> can be H when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

10     R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula



15     wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form



wherein:  
X = O or S  
Y = O or S  
35     R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

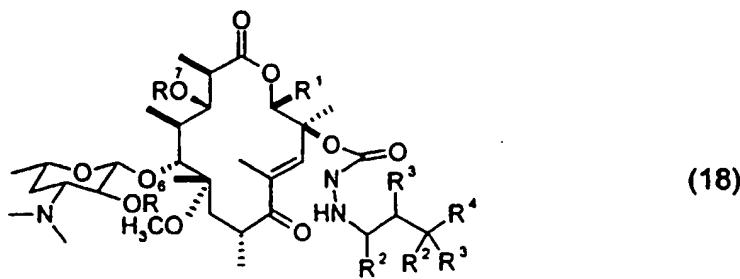


45     and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl.

[0063] The invention also includes a compound of formula

50

55



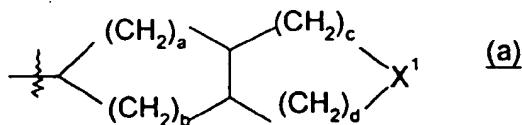
wherein:

15 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

20 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below:

25



30

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

35 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

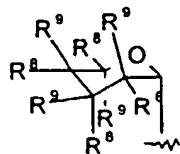
40 a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

45 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; except that neither R<sup>2</sup> or R<sup>3</sup> can be H when R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

50 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

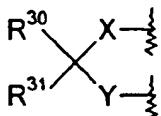
55



EP 1 088 828 A2

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

5



10

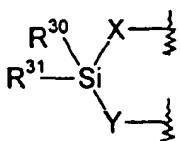
wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

15 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

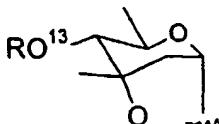
20



25

and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl;  
with the proviso that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> and R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of the formula

30



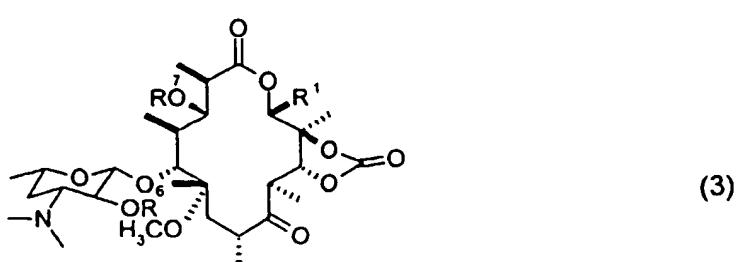
35

wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, than one of R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> must be other than H.

40

[0064] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

45



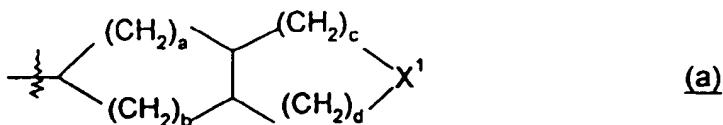
50

wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl,

C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; R<sup>1</sup> is a formula (a) as shown below

5



10

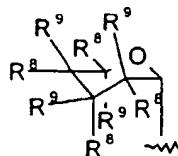
wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

15

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

30

35

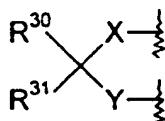


40

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

45



50

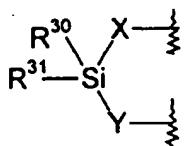
wherein:

X = O or S

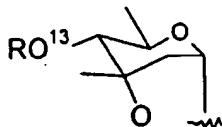
Y = O or S

R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

55

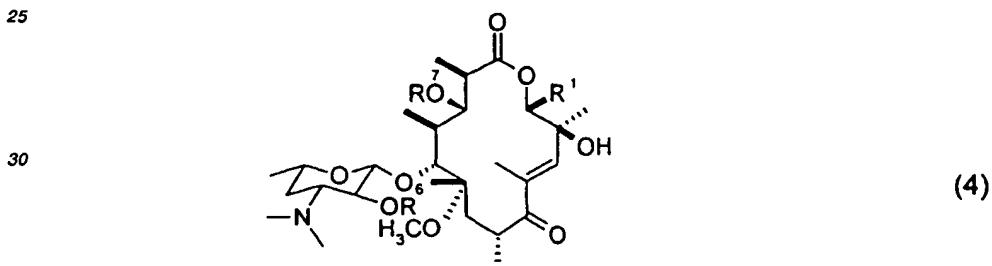


and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl;  
10 with the proviso that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> and R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are each independently H, than R<sup>7</sup> can not be a radical  
of the formula



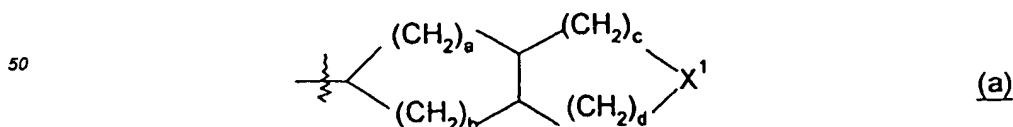
wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the  
20 alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0065] The invention also includes to a compound of the formula



35 wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally  
40 be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-  
branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be  
45 substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3  
to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl,  
C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below



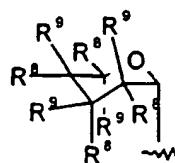
wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2  
55 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing  
from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl  
groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or

EP 1 088 828 A2

5       $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
 10     a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl,  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl,  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; and  
 15     each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6$ - $C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl),  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein  $n$  is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and  
 20      $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
 25      $R^7$  is a radical of formula

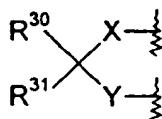
15



20

25     wherein each  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are independently hydrogen, hydroxy,  $C_1-C_6$  alkoxy,  $-OC(O)R^4$ ,  $-OC(O)NNH_2$ ,  $-OSi(R^{10})_3$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and,  
 30      $R^8$  &  $R^9$  may be taken together to form

30



35

wherein:

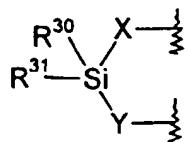
$X = O$  or  $S$

$Y = O$  or  $S$

40

$R^{30}$ , and  $R^{31} = H$ ,  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl, or  $R^{30}$  and  $R^{31}$  taken together form =O or =S or  $R^8$  &  $R^9$  can be taken together to form

45

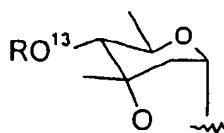


50

each  $R^{10}$  is independently  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl or  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl;

with the proviso that when  $R^1$  is  $-CH_2CH_3$ ,  $R^7$  can not be a radical of the formula

55



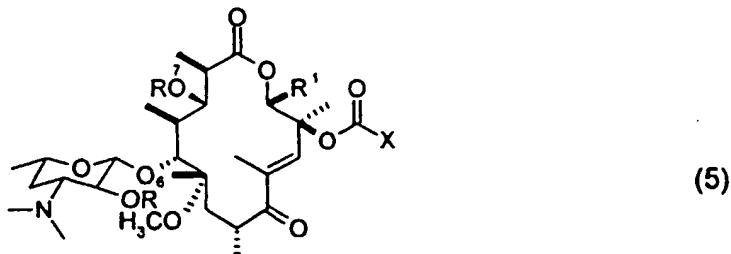
wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0066] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

5

10

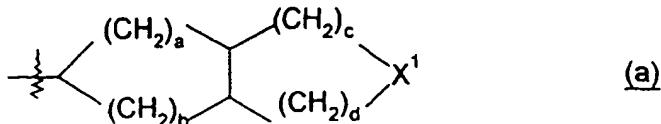
15



wherein:

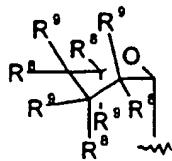
R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

30



35 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or  
R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

55



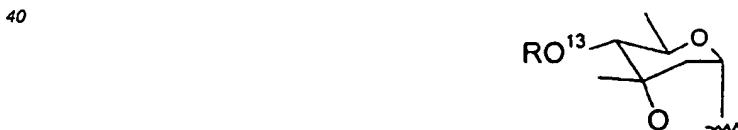
10 wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form



20 wherein:  
X = O or S  
Y = O or S  
25 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form



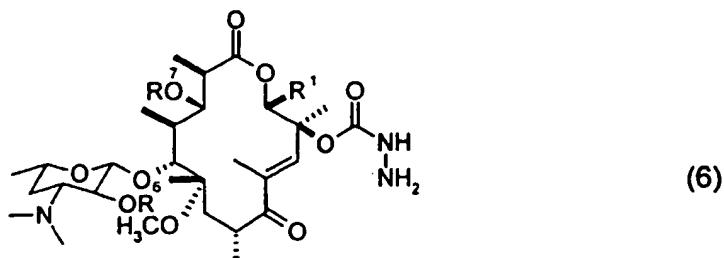
35 each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, and  
X is imidazole, 1,2,4-triazole, hydroxybenzotriazole, or benzotriazole.  
with the proviso that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> and R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of the formula



45 wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, than X must be other than imidazole.

50 [0067] The invention also includes a compound of the formula

5



10

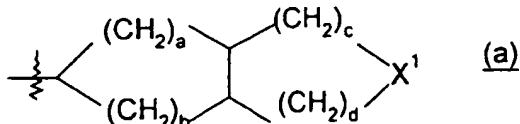
wherein:

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

20 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

25



30 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

35 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

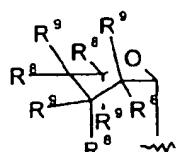
40 a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

45 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

50

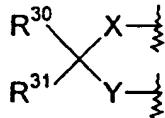


55

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally

replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

5



10

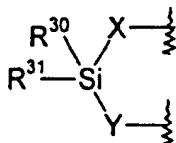
wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

15 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

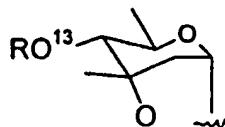
20



25

each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl;with the proviso that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>7</sup> can not be a radical of the formula

30

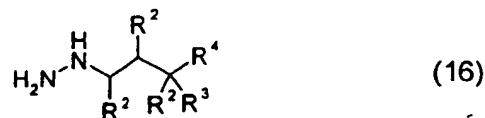


35

wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

[0068] The invention also includes a compound of formula

40



wherein:

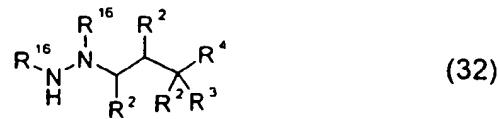
each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and,

each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>.

50

[0069] The invention also includes a compound of formula

55



wherein:

each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and  
 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 each R<sup>16</sup> is independently H or -C(O)OR<sup>5</sup>.

[0070] Certain compounds of formula 15 may have asymmetric centers and therefore exist in different enantiomeric forms. This invention relates to the use of all optical isomers and stereoisomers of the compounds of formula 15 and mixtures thereof. In particular, the invention includes both the R and S configurations of the methyl group at C-10 of the macrolide ring of formula 15, and both the E and Z isomers of the -OR<sup>1</sup> group connected to the nitrogen of the oxime moiety at C-9 of the macrolide ring of formula 15.

[0071] The subject invention also includes isotopically-labelled compounds, and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, which are identical to those recited in Formula 15, but for the fact that one or more atoms are replaced by an atom having an atomic mass or mass number different from the atomic mass or mass number usually found in nature. Examples of isotopes that can be incorporated into compounds of the invention include isotopes of hydrogen, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorous, fluorine and chlorine, such as 2H, 3H, 13C, 14C, 15N, 18O, 17O, 35S, 18F, and 36Cl, respectively. Compounds of the present invention, prodrugs thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts of said compounds or of said prodrugs which contain the aforementioned isotopes and/or other isotopes of other atoms are within the scope of this invention. Certain isotopically-labelled compounds of the present invention, for example those into which radioactive isotopes such as 3H and 14C are incorporated, are useful in drug and/or substrate tissue distribution assays. Tritiated, i.e., 3H, and carbon-14, i.e., 14C, isotopes are particularly preferred for their ease of preparation and detectability. Further, substitution with heavier isotopes such as deuterium, i.e., 2H, can afford certain therapeutic advantages resulting from greater metabolic stability, for example increased in vivo half-life or reduced dosage requirements and, hence, may be preferred in some circumstances. Isotopically labelled compounds of Formula 15 of this invention and prodrugs thereof can generally be prepared by carrying out the procedures disclosed in the Schemes and/or in the Examples and Preparations below, by substituting a readily available isotopically labelled reagent for a non-isotopically labelled reagent.

[0072] This invention also encompasses pharmaceutical compositions containing and methods of treating bacterial infections through administering prodrugs of compounds of the formula 15. Compounds of formula 15 having free amino, amido, hydroxy or carboxylic groups can be converted into prodrugs. Prodrugs include compounds wherein an amino acid residue, or a polypeptide chain of two or more (e.g., two, three or four) amino acid residues is covalently joined through an amide or ester bond to a free amino, hydroxy or carboxylic acid group of compounds of formula 15. The amino acid residues include but are not limited to the 20 naturally occurring amino acids commonly designated by three letter symbols and also includes 4-hydroxyproline, hydroxyllysine, demosine, isodemosine, 3-methylhistidine, norvalin, beta-alanine, gamma-aminobutyric acid, citrulline homocysteine, homoserine, ornithine and methionine sulfone.

[0073] Additional types of prodrugs are also encompassed. For instance, free carboxyl groups can be derivatized as amides or alkyl esters. The amide and ester moieties may incorporate groups including but not limited to ether, amine and carboxylic acid functionalities. Free hydroxy groups may be derivatized using groups including but not limited to hemisuccinates, phosphate esters, dimethylaminoacetates, and phosphoryloxymethoxy carbonyls, as outlined in D. Fleisher, R. Bong, B.H. Stewart, Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews (1996) 19, 115. Carbamate prodrugs of hydroxy and amino groups are also included, as are carbonate prodrugs and sulfate esters of hydroxy groups. Derivatization of hydroxy groups as (acyloxy)methyl and (acyloxy)ethyl ethers wherein the acyl group may be an alkyl ester, optionally substituted with groups including but not limited to ether, amine and carboxylic acid functionalities, or where the acyl group is an amino acid ester as described above, are also encompassed. Prodrugs of this type are described in R.P. Robinson et al., J. Medicinal Chemistry (1996) 39, 10.

[0074] Selective introduction of prodrug side chains can be carried out on the hydroxy groups of the hygromycin A core molecule. For instance, exhaustive silylation of the six hydroxy groups of hygromycin A can be carried out, for instance with tert-butyl dimethylsilyl chloride. Subjection of the hexasilyl derivative to the action of potassium carbonate in methanol at room temperature selectively removes the phenolic silyl group, allowing further selective modification at that position. In another example, incomplete silylation of hygromycin A (see PC 10186, R. Linde, 2"-deoxy hygromycin A derivatives, U.S. provisional patent application no. 60/084,058, filed May 4, 1998) provides the pentasilyl derivative in which the C-2" hydroxy group is free. Selective acylation, alkylation, etc. can be carried out on this derivative to provide prodrug attachment at C-2".

Detailed Description of the Invention

[0075] The process of the present invention and the preparation of the compounds of the present invention are illustrated in the Schemes 1-4 that follow. In the following Schemes and discussion that follows, unless otherwise indicated, R<sup>1</sup> to R<sup>17</sup>, R<sup>24</sup>, X, X<sup>1</sup>, C, D, Y, Z are as defined above. The following Schemes and the discussion that follows describe the preparation of the Compounds of Formulas 1-26.

10

15

20

25

30

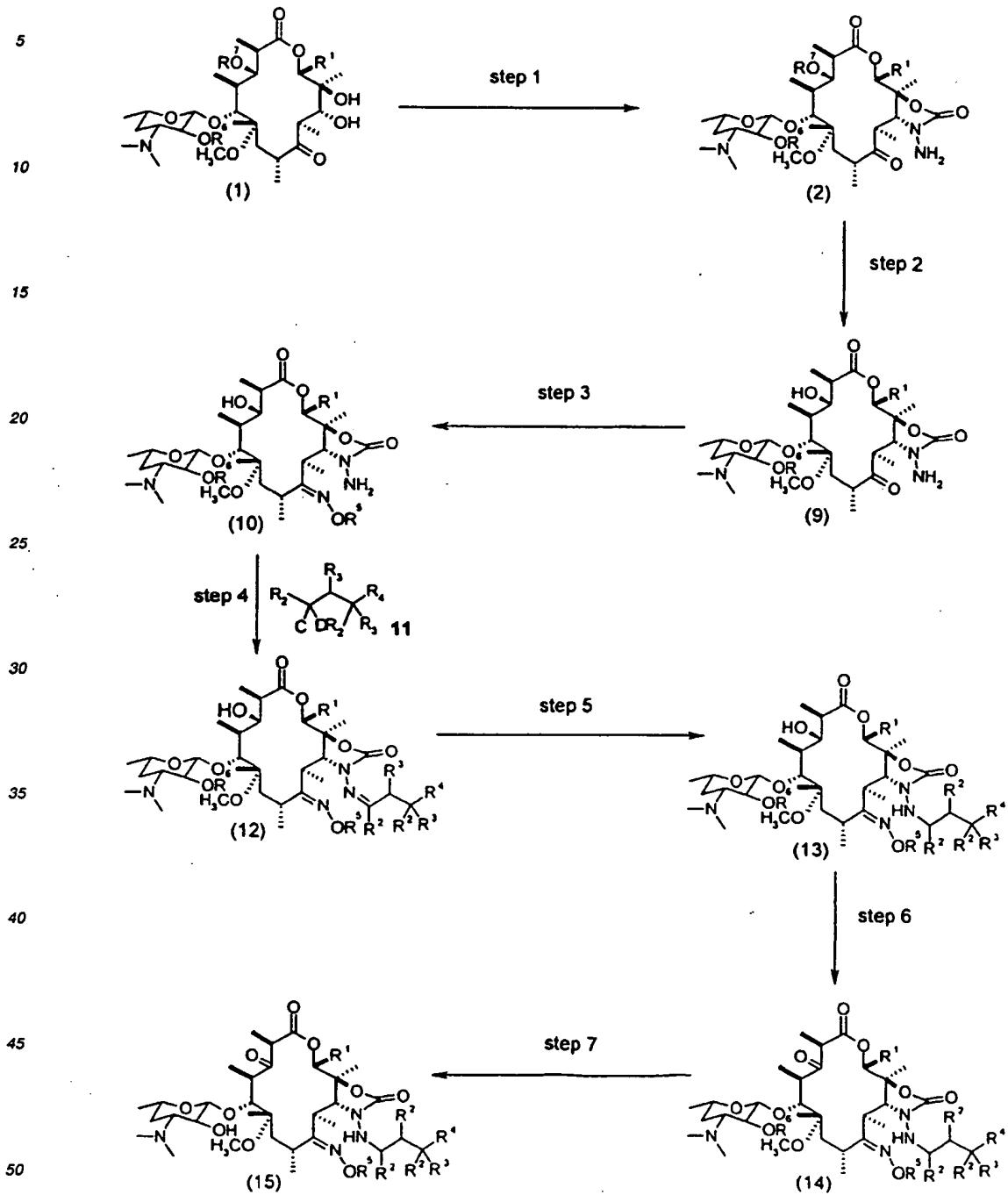
35

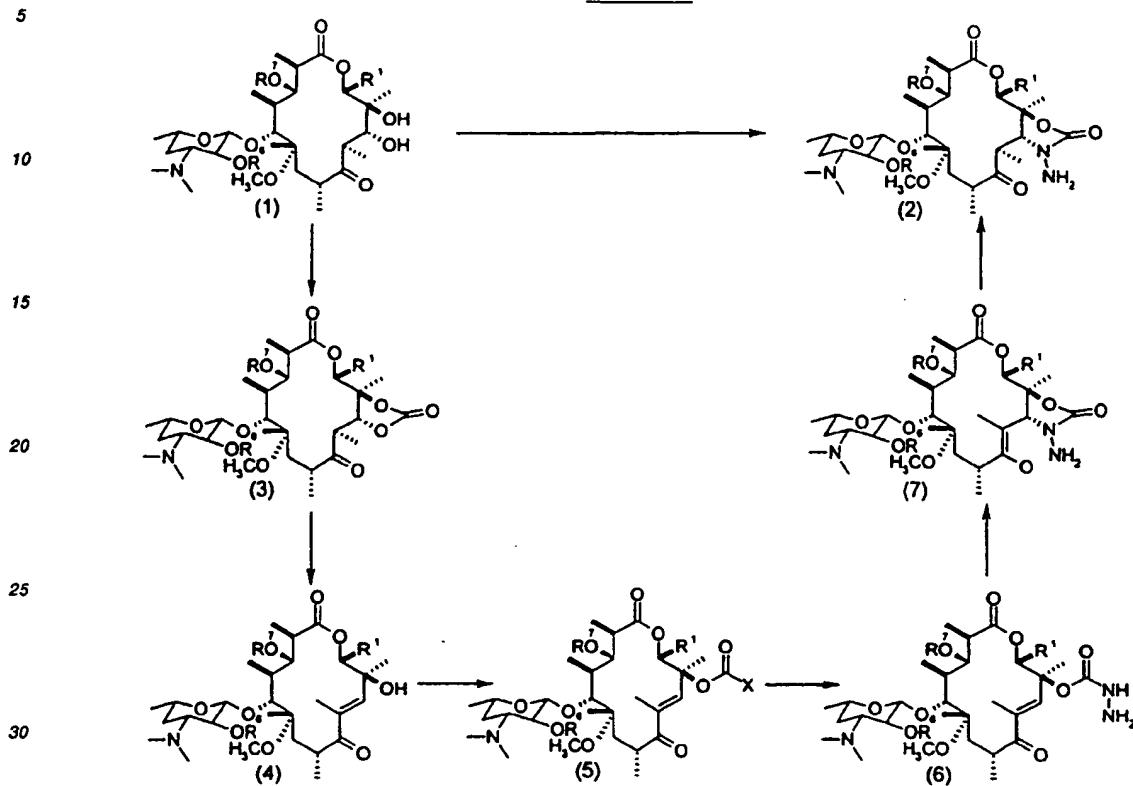
40

45

50

55

Scheme I

Scheme 2

- [0076] In step 1 of Scheme 1, compound 1 is treated with a carbonyl source including but not limited to carbonyl diimidazole (CDI), phosgene, triphosgene, carbonyl bisbenzotriazole, carbonyl bishydroxybenzotriazole, or carbonyl bis-1,2,4-triazole and a base including but not limited to 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), 1,2-dimethyl-1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, sodium hexamethyldisilazane, lithium diisopropylamide, potassium hexamethyldisilazane, or tetramethyl guanidine in a range of inert solvents including, but not limited to, isopropylether, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. The reaction is monitored for the formation of intermediate of formula 5. Preferably, the reaction is run with CDI and DBU in ether solvent, preferably tetrahydrofuran with or without isopropylether. Once conversion to compound 5 is complete, hydrazine or hydrazine hydrate is added to the reaction between -78°C and 50°C. Preferably, hydrazine hydrate is added between -10°C and 10°C. The reaction proceeds through intermediates (3) and (4) and stops at intermediate (5) prior to hydrazine addition (shown in Scheme 2). The second stage of this reaction (after the addition of hydrazine) involves an intermediate of formula (6). No isomerization of the initially formed stereocenter at carbon 10 can take place at the temperature that the hydrazine addition takes place, and so the stereochemistry at C10 is a result of the initial quench of the intermediate enol(ate).
- [0077] In step 2 of Scheme 1, compound 2 can be converted to compound 9 with acids including, but not limited to, hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic acids, tosic acid, triflic acid, or trifluoroacetic acid; with or without water. The reaction can be run in a variety of polar solvents including, but not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, and formic acid over a range of temperatures for -25°C to 100°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in methanol with 12N hydrochloric acid at 35°C.
- [0078] In step 3 of Scheme 1, compound 9 can be converted to compound 10 by treating it with a compound of formula H<sub>2</sub>NOR<sup>5</sup>, as its free base or in acid addition salt form such as R<sup>5</sup>ONH<sub>3</sub>Cl. The reaction can be run with or without added base including, but not limited to, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine bases, or dimethylaminopyridine. The reaction can be run in a variety of polar solvents including, but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol,

tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, and dimethylsulfoxide at elevated temperature between 40°C and 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run with an excess of methoxylaminehydrochloride in isopropanol at 83°C.

[0079] In step 4 of Scheme 1, compound 10 can be converted to compound 12 by reacting it with compound 11 in a variety of solvents under neutral or acidic conditions. Some representative acids that can be used as additives, solvent, or co-solvent include, but are not limited to, acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents include, but are not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, dichloroethane, ethylacetate and toluene. Examples of neutral conditions would be heating the reaction in one of the above solvents without acid additive between 50°C and 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in acetic acid or ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature.

[0080] In step 5 of Scheme 1, compound 12 can be converted to compound 13 by treating it with a metal hydride reducing agent such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride under acidic conditions. The solvent includes acetic acid, or alcoholic solvent with an acid additive such as acetic acid. The alcoholic solvent includes, but is not limited to, ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, and tert-butanol. Preferably, the reaction is run at room temperature in acetic acid with an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

[0081] In step 6 of Scheme 1, compound 13 can be converted to compound 14 by treating it under Swern conditions. Preferably, the Swern conditions are selected from the following:

(a) In an inert solvent including, but not limited to dichloromethane, dichloroethane, and tetrachloroethane; dimethylsulfoxide is preactivated with activating agents including, but not limited to oxalyl chloride, trifluoroacetic anhydride, sulfonyl chloride, and thionyl chloride; followed by the addition of the compound 13. Trialkylamine base is added after a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours at a temperature range from -80°C to 50°C;

(b) Compound 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed in one of said inert solvents, followed by addition of said activating agent and then followed by the addition of trialkylamine base at a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours. This occurs at a temperature range from about -80°C to 50°C. Preferably the reaction is run in methylene chloride at 0°C, where the compound of the formula 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed and activated by trifluoroacetic anhydride. This is followed by triethylamine two hours later. The reaction is then warmed to room temperature.

[0082] In step 7 of Scheme 1, compound 14 can be converted to compound 15 by treating it with a nucleophile to cleave the R<sup>6</sup> protecting group.

[0083] In one embodiment the R<sup>6</sup> protecting group is removed by solvolysis in an alcoholic or aqueous solvent with the optional addition of base to accelerate the reaction. In the process of preparing compound 15, examples of suitable alcoholic solvents include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol and tert-butanol. Examples of bases includes, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium fluoride and barium hydroxide.

[0084] In addition the R<sup>6</sup> protecting group can be removed with a nucleophile, including but not limited to, ammonium hydroxide, monoalkyl amine, dialkyl-amine, alkane thiol or hydroxide. Useable solvents include, but are not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methyl pyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethyl acetamide, tetrahydrofuran, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran ethylacetate, and toluene. Preferably the deprotection is run in methanol with the addition of potassium carbonate at room temperature.

[0085] In another embodiment, compound 13, wherein R<sup>6</sup> is H, is converted to compound 15 by treating it under Swern conditions. Preferably, the Swern conditions are selected from the following:

(a) In an inert solvent including, but not limited to, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, and tetrachloroethane; dimethylsulfoxide is preactivated with activating agents including, but not limited to, oxalyl chloride, trifluoroacetic anhydride, sulfonyl chloride, and thionyl chloride; followed by addition of the compound 13. Trialkylamine base is added after a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours at a temperature range from -80°C to 50°C;

(b) Compound 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed in one of the inert solvents, followed by addition of the activating agent and then followed by the addition of trialkylamine base at a time period of about 5 minutes to 24 hours. This occurs at a temperature range from about -80°C to 50°C. Preferably the reaction is run in methylene chloride at 0°C, where the compound of the formula 13 and dimethylsulfoxide are premixed and activated by trifluoroacetic anhydride. This is followed by triethylamine two hours later. The reaction is then warmed to room temperature.

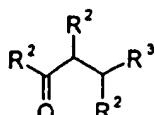
[0086] Alternatively, isolated compound 2 is converted to compound 10 by treating it with a reagent of the formula H<sub>2</sub>NOR<sup>5</sup> as its acid addition salt, with or without an added base. The base includes, but is not limited, to pyridine,

EP 1 088 828 A2

2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine bases, or dimethylaminopyridine in polar solvent including, but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, and dimethylsulfoxide. The reaction is run at elevated temperatures between about 40°C and 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run with an excess of methoxylamine hydrochloride and one equivalent of 2,6-lutidine in tert-butanol at about 80°C.

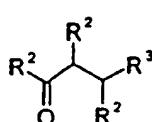
[0087] Alternatively, a compound of formula 13 is produced by reaction of a compound of formula 10 with a compound of formula 11 in a variety of solvents under acidic conditions. Acetic acid is used as an additive, solvent, or co-solvent, and usable solvents include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. Preferably, the reaction is run in acetic acid or ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature. The reaction is monitored for conversion to an intermediate of formula 12, at which point it is treated with a metal hydride reducing agent such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride. Preferably, the reaction is run at room temperature with an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

[0088] Alternatively, a compound of formula 12 may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula 20 with a compound of formula



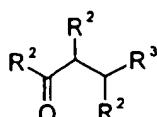
in a variety of alcoholic solvents under acidic conditions. Some representative acids that can be used as additives, or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents are alcohols including but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, or tert-butanol. The reaction is monitored for the formation of an intermediate of formula 11, at which point a compound of formula 10 is added. Preferably, the reaction is run in ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature.

[0089] Alternatively, a compound of formula 13 may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula 20 as its free base or acid addition salt with a compound of formula



35 and a compound of formula 10 under acidic conditions. Some representative acids that can be used as additives or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents include, but are not limited to, acetic acid, formic acid, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, or tetrahydrofuran. This reaction may involve an intermediate of a compound of formula 34. The reaction is monitored for the formation of intermediate 12, at which point it is treated with a metal hydride reducing agent such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride. Preferably, the reaction is run at room temperature in acetic acid with or without dichloromethane as a cosolvent, using an excess of a compound of formula 20 as its bishydrochloric acid salt, and is followed by an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride after formation of a compound of formula 12.

[0090] Alternatively, a compound of formula 12 may be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula 20 as its free base or acid addition salt with a compound of formula

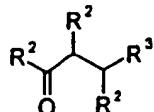


55 and a compound of formula 10 under acidic conditions. Some representative acids that can be used as additives or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents include, but are not limited to, acetic acid, formic acid, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, or tetrahydrofuran. This reaction involves an intermediate compound of formula 34. Preferably, the reaction is run at room temperature in acetic acid with or without dichloromethane

as a co-solvent, using an excess of a compound of formula 20 as its bishydrochloric acid salt.

[0091] Alternatively, a compound of formula 12 is produced by reaction of a compound of formula 20 with a compound of formula

5



10

in a variety of alcoholic solvents under acidic conditions. Some representative acids that are used as additives, or co-solvents are acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents are alcohols including but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, or tert-butanol. The reaction is monitored for the formation of an intermediate of formula 11, at which point a compound of formula 10 is added. Preferably, the reaction is run in ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature.

15

20

25

30

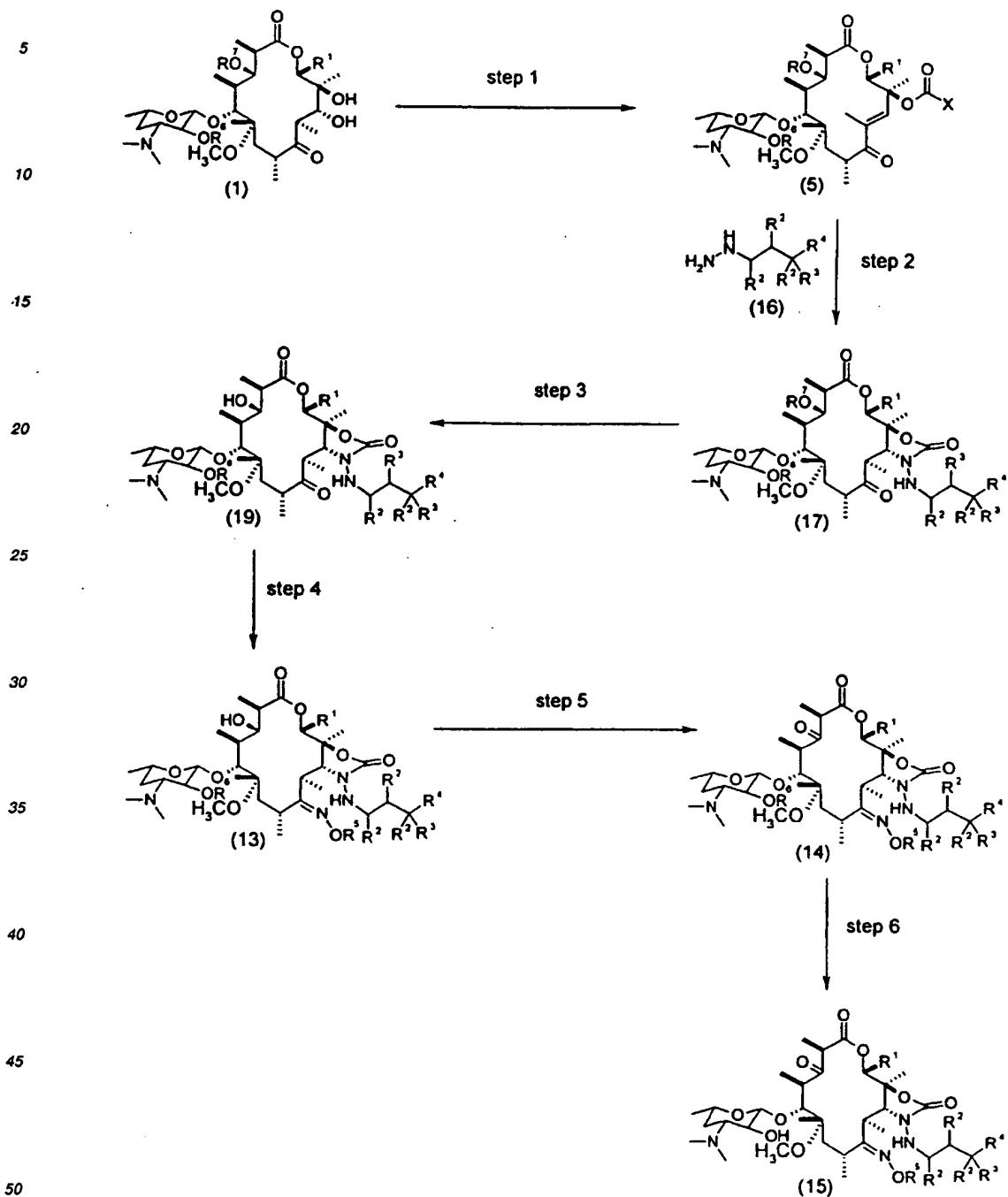
35

40

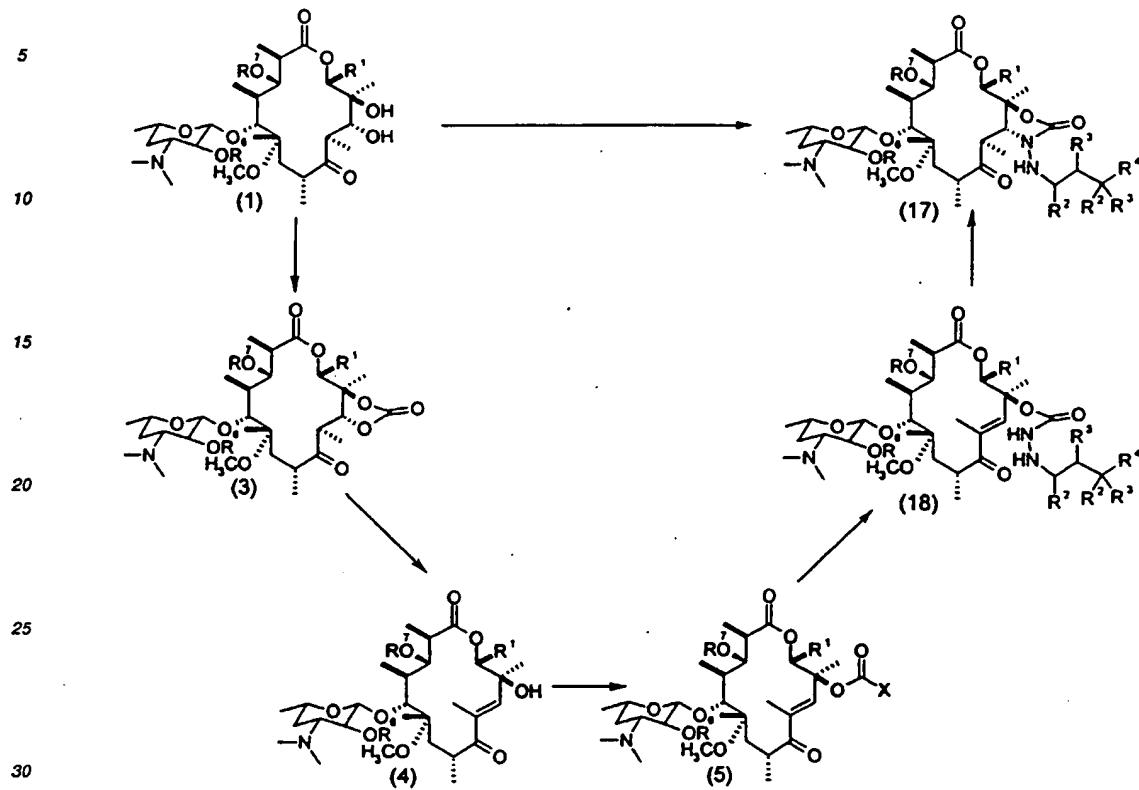
45

50

55

Scheme 3

Scheme 4



[0092] In Scheme 3 step 1, a compound of formula (5) is prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula 2 with a carbonyl source including, but not limited to, carbonyl diimidazole (CDI), phosgene, triphosgene, carbonyl bisbenzotriazole, carbonyl bishydroxybenzotriazole, or carbonyl bis-1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-pyrimidine, sodium hexamethyldisilazane, lithium diisopropylamide, potassium hexamethyldisilazane, or tetramethyl guanidine in inert solvents including, but not limited to, isopropylether, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. This reaction involves the intermediates of compounds of the formula (3) and (4). [See scheme 4]

[0093] In step 2 of Scheme 3 a compound of formula 17 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula (16) with a compound of formula 5 in a range of inert solvents including, but not limited to, isopropylether, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. The reaction is run at a temperature between 0°C to 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in acetonitrile at reflux. This reaction involves an intermediate of a compound of the formula (18). [See scheme 4]

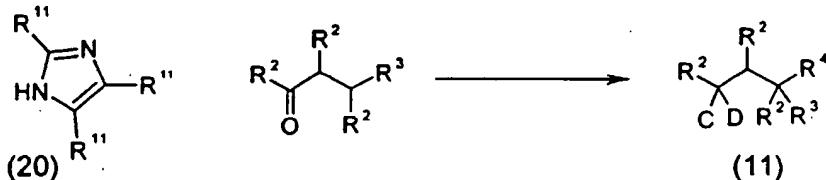
[0094] In step 3 of Scheme 3, a compound of formula 19 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula (17) with acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic acids, tosic acid, triflic acid, or trifluoroacetic acid, with or without water. The reaction is run in a variety of polar solvents including, but not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, and formic acid over a range of temperatures for -25°C to 100°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in methanol with 12N HCl at 35°C.

[0095] In step 4 of Scheme 3, a compound of formula 13 can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula H<sub>2</sub>NOR<sup>5</sup>, as its free base or in acid addition salt form such as R<sup>5</sup>ONH<sub>3</sub>Cl. The reaction can be run with or without added base including, but not limited to, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine bases, or dimethylaminopyridine. The reaction is run in a variety of polar solvents including, but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, and dimethylsulfoxide at ele-

vated temperature between 40°C and 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run with an excess of methoxylaminehydrochloride in isopropanol at about 83°C.

[0096] Alternatively, compound 17 can be converted to compound 13 by treating it with a reagent of the formula H<sub>2</sub>NOR<sup>5</sup> as its acid addition salt, with or without added base. The base includes, but is not limited to, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, imidazole, amine bases, or dimethylaminopyridine in polar solvent including, but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, and dimethylsulfoxide. The reaction is run at elevated temperatures between about 40°C and 150°C. Preferably, the reaction is run with an excess of methoxylamine hydrochloride and one equivalent of 2,6-lutidine in tert-butanol at about 80°C.

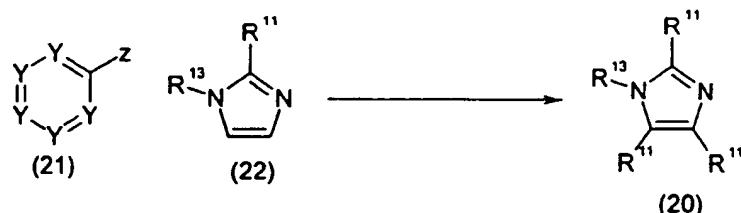
[0097] Alternatively, a compound of formula 17 can be prepared by the reaction of compound 1 with a carbonyl source including, but not limited to, carbonyl diimidazole (CDI), phosgene, triphosgene, carbonyl bisbenzotriazole, carbonyl bishydroxybenzotriazole, or carbonyl bis-1,2,4-triazone and a base including, but not limited to, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), 1,2-dimethyl-1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-pyrimidine, sodium hexamethyldisilazane, lithium diisopropylamide, potassium hexamethyldisilazane, or tetramethyl guanidine in a range of inert solvents including, but not limited to, isopropylether, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. The reaction is monitored for the formation of an intermediate of formula 5. Preferably, the reaction is run with CDI and DBU in acetonitrile. Once conversion to formula 5 is complete, a compound of formula 16 is added to the reaction between 0°C and 150°C. Preferably the addition is done between 25°C and 75°C.



[0098] According to the invention, a compound of formula 11 is produced by the reaction of a compound of formula 20 with a compound of formula

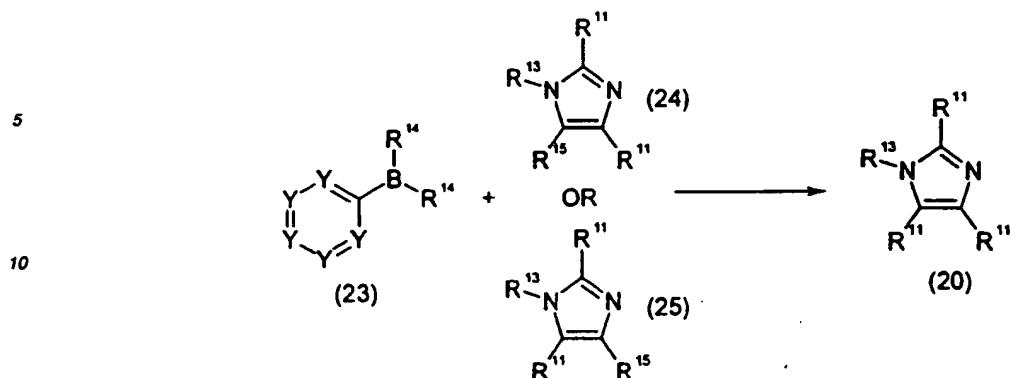


in a variety of alcoholic solvents under acidic conditions. Some representative acids that can be used as additives or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents such as alcohols including, but not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, or tert-butanol. Preferably, the reaction is run in ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature.

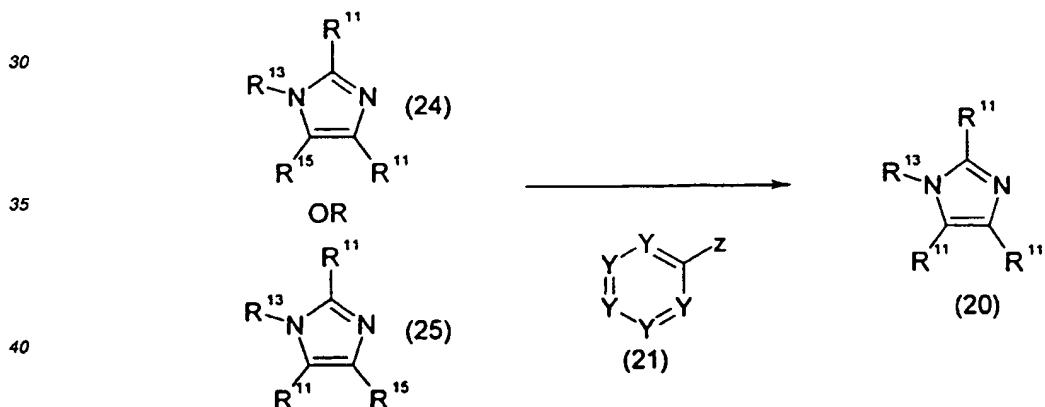


50 [0099] According to the invention, a compound of formula 20 can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula 21 with a compound of formula 22. The reaction is run in the presence of a palladium catalyst including, but not limited to, palladium (II) acetate and a trialkyl or triarylphosphine including but not limited to triphenylphosphine, tri-t-butyl-phosphine, or tri-o-tolylphosphine. In the reaction the base includes, but is not limited to, cesium carbonate or potassium carbonate and the solvent includes, but is not limited to, dimethylformamide or N-methylpyrrolidinone at a temperature of about 25°C to 200°C. Preferably the reaction is run with benzylimidazole and 3-bromopyridine in dimethylformamide at reflux with palladium (II) acetate, triphenyl phosphine and cesium carbonate.

55



[0100] Alternatively, a compound of formula 20 can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula 23 with a compound of formula 24 or 25. The reaction is run in the presence of an inert solvent, base and a palladium catalyst at a temperature at about 25°C to 125°C for about 30 minutes to 48 hours. The base includes, but is not limited to, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium fluoride, and barium hydroxide. Suitable palladium catalysts include, but are not limited to, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), dichlorobis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II), palladium(II) acetate, allylpalladium chloride dimer, and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0). Optionally the reaction medium could also contain a triarylphosphine or trialkylphosphine, examples of which include, but are not limited to, triphenylphosphine, tri(o-tolyl)phosphine and tri-*t*-butylphosphine and could also contain tetrabutylammonium iodide. The inert solvent includes, but is not limited to, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, and dimethoxyethane. Preferably, the reaction is run in dimethylformamide with potassium hydroxide, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), and tetrabutylammonium iodide at reflux.



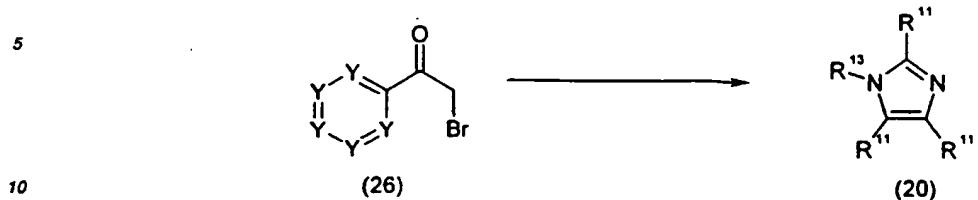
[0101] Alternatively, a compound of formula 20 can be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula 24 or 25 with reagents including, but not limited to,

- a) alkylmagnesium chloride, bromide or iodide, where the alkyl includes but is not limited to methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, or *t*-butyl, or magnesium(0), followed by treatment with zinc chloride, zinc bromide, or zinc iodide, or,
- b) with reagents such as alkylzinc chloride, alkyl zinc bromide or alkylzinc iodide, where the alkyl includes but is not limited to, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, or *t*-butyl or zinc(0) and zinc chloride, zinc bromide, or zinc iodide

50

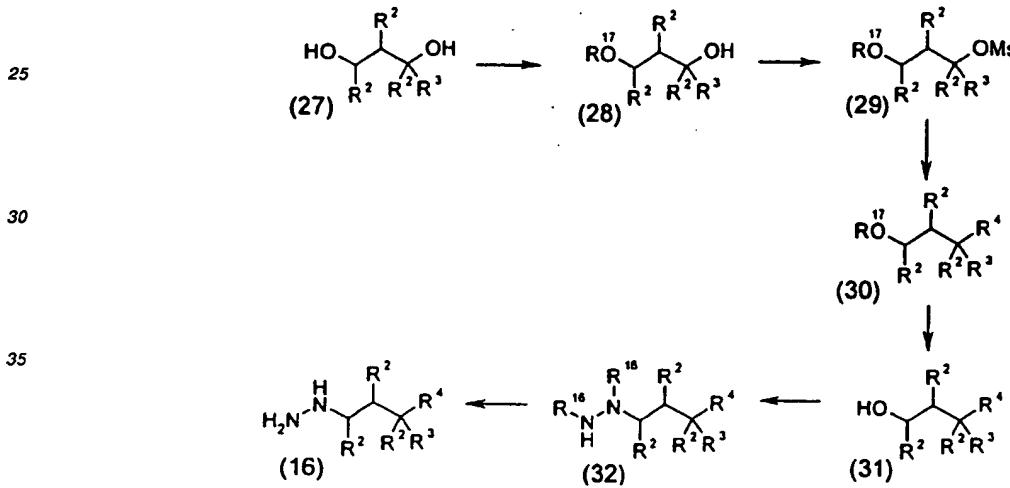
followed by reaction with a compound of formula 21 in the presence of a palladium catalyst including, but not limited to, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), dichlorobis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II), palladium(II) acetate, allylpalladium chloride dimer, and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0). The reaction medium may optionally also contain a triarylphosphine or trialkylphosphine, examples of which include but are not limited to triphenylphosphine, tri(o-tolyl)phosphine and tri-*t*-butylphosphine. The inert solvent includes, but is not limited to, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, and dimethoxyethane. Preferably, the reaction is run in tetrahydrofuran, with ethylmagnesium bromide followed by zinc chloride, followed by the compound of formula 21 and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), and the reaction is

heated from room temperature to 70°C.



[0102] Alternatively, a compound of formula 20 can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula 26 as its free base or acid addition salt with formamide at the elevated temperature of about 120°C to 220°C. Preferably the reaction is run in formamide at 160°C.

[0103] Alternatively, a compound of formula 20 can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula 26 as its free base or acid addition salt with formamidine acetate in a polar solvent with or without added base at temperatures between 25°C and 200°C. Examples of polar solvents include, but are not limited to, dimethylformamide, dimethylacetamide, acetonitrile, formamide, and dimethylsulfoxide. Examples of bases include, but are not limited to, potassium acetate and sodium acetate. Preferably, the reaction is run in dimethylformamide with potassium acetate at 65°C.



[0104] According to the invention, a compound of formula 16 can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula 32 under conditions appropriate to remove the R<sup>16</sup> protecting group. Where R<sup>16</sup> is tert-butylcarbamate (BOC), the reaction can be run with acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic acids, tosic acid, triflic acid, or trifluoroacetic acid, with or without water. The reaction can be run in a variety of polar or nonpolar solvents including, but not limited to water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, formic acid, toluene, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane over a range of temperatures from 25°C to 200°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in methanol with 6N HCl at 50°C.

[0105] According to the invention, a compound of formula 32 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula 31 with a trialkyl or triaryl phosphine and a reagent of formula R<sup>5</sup>OC(O)N=NC(O)OR<sup>5</sup> in an inert solvent. Examples of phosphines include, but are not limited to, triphenylphosphine, trimethylphosphine, trit-butylphosphine, or tributylphosphine. Examples of inert solvents include, but are not limited to, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, acetonitrile, or tetrahydrofuran. Preferably, the reaction is run with triphenylphosphine and ditert-butylazadicarboxylate in tetrahydrofuran from 0°C to room temperature.

[0106] According to the invention, a compound of formula 31 can be prepared by the deprotection of a compound of formula 30 under conditions appropriate to remove the alcohol protecting group R<sup>17</sup>.

a) When R<sup>17</sup> is trisubstitutedsilyl, disubstitutedketal, or monosubstitutedacetate, the reaction is with acids such as

hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, nitric, alkylsulfonic acids, tosic acid, triflic acid, or trifluoroacetic acid; or

b) If R<sup>17</sup> is trisubstitutedsilyl, the reaction with flouride sources includes but not limited to, tetrabutylammonium flouride, hydroflouric acid, HF-pyridine, potassium flouride, cesium flouride, and sodium flouride,

5 with or without water, in a variety of polar or nonpolar solvents including, but not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tert-butanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, acetic acid, formic acid, toluene, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane over a range of temperatures from 25°C to 200°C. This should suffice to remove R<sup>17</sup>. Preferably, if R<sup>17</sup> is 10 tert-butyldimethylsilyl, the reaction is run in tetrahydrofuran with tetrabutylammonium flouride.

[0107] When R<sup>17</sup> is -C(O)OR<sup>5</sup> or R<sup>6</sup>, the protecting group can be cleaved with a nucleophile. This involves:

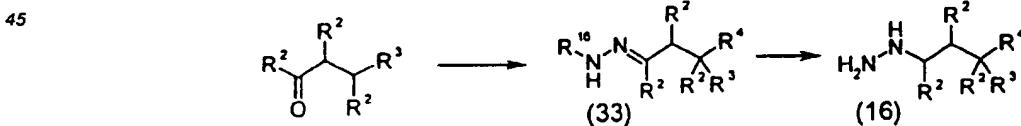
15 a) solvolysis in alcoholic or aqueous solvent, with the addition of base optional to accelerate the reaction. Examples of 20 alcoholic solvents include, but are not limited to, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, and tert-butanol. Examples of useable bases include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium flouride, and barium hydroxide; or b) with a nucleophile including, but not limited to, ammonium hydroxide, monoalkyl amine, dialkylamine, alkanethiol, or hydroxide in a solvent including but not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, 25 dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, dichloroethane, ethylacetate and toluene.

[0108] Preferably, this deprotection is run in methanol with the addition of potassium carbonate at room temperature.

[0109] According to the invention, a compound of formula 30 can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of 25 formula 29 with a compound of formula 20 and base in a polar solvent. Examples of bases that that can be used include, but are not limited to, sodium hydride, potassium tert-butoxide, sodium tert-butoxide, potassium hexamethyldisilazide, sodium hexamethyldisilazide, and lithium diisopropylamide. Examples of solvents that can be used include, but are not limited to, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, and dimethylsulfoxide. Preferably, the reaction is run with sodium hydride in dimethylformamide.

[0110] According to the invention, a compound of formula 29 can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of 30 formula 28 with a mesylating agent and a base in inert solvent. Mesylating agents include, but are not limited to, mesic anyhydride, mesyl chloride, and mesyl bromide. Useable bases include, but are not limited to, trialkylamines such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, and dimethylaminopyridine. Examples of inert solvents include, but are not limited to, tetrahydrofuran, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane. Preferably, the reaction is run with mesyl chloride and triethylamine in dichloromethane.

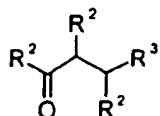
[0111] According to the invention, a compound of formula 28 can be prepared by the selective protection of a compound of formula 27 with reagents including, but not limited to, trisubstitutedsilyl chloride, trisubstitutedsilyl imidazole, trisubstitutedsilyl triflate, acid chlorides, acid anhydrides, chloroformates, carbonate anhydrides, mixed anhydrides, and isocyanates and a base including but not limited to, imidazole, trialkylamines, triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, and dimethylaminopyridine in aprotic solvents including, but not limited to, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, toluene, dichloroethane, tetrachloroethane, dioxane, and dichloromethane. Preferably, the reaction is run with tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride and imidazole in dichloromethane at 0°C.



50 [0112] In another embodiment, a compound of formula 16 can be prepared by the reduction of a compound of formula 33 with a metal hydride reducing agent such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride under acidic conditions. The solvent includes, but is not limited to, acetic acid, acetonitrile, or alcoholic solvent with an acid additive such as acetic acid. The alcoholic solvent includes, but is not limited to, ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, and tert-butanol. Preferably, the reaction is run at room temperature in acetic acid with an excess of sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

55 [0113] According to the invention, a compound of formula (33) can be prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

5



with a reagent of formula

10

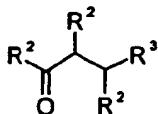


under neutral or acidic conditions. Some representative acids that can be used as additives, solvent, or co-solvent are acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents include, but are not limited to, water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, tertbutanol, dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidinone, acetonitrile, dimethylacetamide, tetrahydrofuran, dimethylsulfoxide, dioxane, dimethoxyethane, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, dichloroethane, ethylacetate and touene. Examples of neutral conditions would be heating the reaction in solvent without acid additive between 80°C and 110°C. Preferably, the reaction is run in acetic acid or ethanol with acetic acid at room temperature.

[0114] In another embodiment, a compound of formula 16 includes prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

20

25



with reagent of formula

30



in a variety of solvents under acidic conditions, followed by reduction with a metal hydride reducing agent such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride under acidic conditions. Some representative acids that can be used as additives, solvent, or co-solvent include but are not limited to, acetic and formic acid, and usable solvents include, but are not limited to acetonitrile, dichloromethane, tetrachloroethane, and dichloroethane. Preferably, the reaction is run in acetic acid at room temperature, followed by reduction with sodium triacetoxyborohydride.

[0115] The present invention is illustrated by the following examples, but it is not limited to the details thereof.

40 Example 1

2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-6-O-methylerythromycin A, 11,12-carbamate (2)

[0116] To a dried 200L vessel under nitrogen atmosphere was charged 26 gallons IPE and 11 gallons THF. 11.92kg of 2',4"-bis-O-acetyl-6-O-methylerythromycin A (1) (14.33 mol) was added followed by 11.62 kg CDI (71.65 mol) and 6.54 kg DBU (43 mol). The white slurry was heated to 45-50°C for 2.5 hours. The reaction was assayed for complete conversion to 10,11-anhydro-2',4"-bis-O-acetyl-12-O-imidazoylcarbonyl-6-O-methylerythromycin A (5). Upon completion, the reaction was cooled to 0°C and 5.6L hydrazine hydrate (114.64 mol) was slowly added. The reaction was stirred for 1h and assayed for completeness. The IPE and THF was removed *in vacuo* and 23L of water was added. The solids were granulated for 2.5 hours at 15°C, then filtered and rinsed with 10L water. The solids were air dried at 55°C. A total of 10.8kg of 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-6-O-methylerythromycin A, 11,12-carbamate (2) was obtained (12.4 mol, 83%).

Example2:

55

2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (9)

[0117] To a 200L reactor was charged 24L methanol and 0.94L 12N HCl (10.6 mol). The solution was set at 30°C

and 4.7kg 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-6-O-methylerythromycin A, 11,12-carbamate (2) (5.3 mol) was added. The reaction was stirred 10 min to dissolve the solids, then it was heated to 45°C for 5hr. Once the reaction was complete, the methanol was removed *in vacuo*, and the internal temperature was set at 20°C. The reaction was extracted between sodium carbonate (1.7kg, 16 mol) in 24L water and 47L EtOAc. The aqueous layer was separated, and the organic layer was concentrated to low volume. 3.5L IPE was added and the solids were granulated at 20°C for 12h. The solids were filtered, rinsed with 3L IPE, and dried *in vacuo* to yield 2.55kg (3.80 mol, 67%) 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (9).

Example 3:

2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-9-deoxo-9-methoxyimino-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (10)

[0118] To a dried reactor under nitrogen atmosphere was charged 32L of isopropanol (IPO), 6.83kg 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (9) (10.2 mol), and 13.6kg MeONH<sub>3</sub>Cl (162.6 mol) at room temperature. The reaction was heated to 83°C for 32 hours. Once the reaction was complete (by HPLC assay), the reaction was cooled to 25°C and 65L EtOAc was charged. A solution of 17kg Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (162.6 mol) in 54L water was slowly added. The pH of the aqueous layer was >9 after the addition was complete. The layers were allowed to settle for 30min, then separated. The jacket temperature was set to 45°C and the organics were removed *in vacuo* to the lowest stirrable volume. The jacket was cooled to 15°C, and 30L of EtOAc was added to the slurry. The solids were granulated for 2.5h, then filtered, rinsed with 6L EtOAc, and dried *in vacuo* to yield 4.55kg 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-9-deoxo-9-methoxyimino-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (10) (6.49 mol, 64%).

Example 4:

2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-9-deoxo-9-methoxyimino-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (10)

[0119] 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-6-O-methylerythromycin A, 11,12-carbamate (2) (0.936g, 1.07 mmol) was suspended in 10mL IPO and 0.45g MeONH<sub>3</sub>Cl (5.4 mmol) was added. The reaction was heated at 80°C for 18h. The reaction was cooled to 25°C, and 0.27g MeONH<sub>3</sub>Cl (3.2 mmol) was added. The reaction was heated at 90°C for 18h. EtOAc was added, and the mixture was extracted with water twice and brine once. The organics were dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated to give 1.01g 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-9-deoxo-9-methoxyimino-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (10). The product could be purified by crystallization from EtOAc.

Example 5:

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)-β-D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butylidine]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (12)

[0120] (R/S)-3-(4-pyridin-3-yl-imidazol-1-yl)-butan-1-al (11) (8.1g, 24.2 mmol) was dissolved in 120mL HOAc and 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-9-deoxo-9-methoxyimino-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-desosaminyl-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (10) (11.3g, 16.1 mmol) was added. All solids dissolved after 15 min. After 1 h, the reaction was poured into 250g sodium carbonate in 1.25L water and 400mL EtOAc. The water layer was removed, the organics were washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to leave 15.1g of (12).

Example 6:

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)-β-D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butylidine]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (12)

[0121] To a stirred solution of crotonaldehyde (2 mmol) in ethanol is added (6 mmol) acetic acid and (6 mmol) 3-(1

(3*H*-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine. The reaction is stirred for 48 hours, and is assayed for the formation of (*R/S*)-3-(4-pyridin-3-yl-imidazol-1-yl)-butan-1-al (11). After complete formation of (11), a compound of formula 10 is added and the reaction is stirred for 1 hour. The reaction is poured into sodium carbonate, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer is dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield (12).

5

Example 7:

(3a*S*,4*R*,7*R*,8*S*,9*S*,10*R*,11*R*,13*R*,15*R*,15a*R*)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2*H*-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-*d*]oxazole-2,6,14(1*H*,7*H*)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3*a*,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-*O*-methylloxime (13)

[0122] To 13.5g (3a*S*,4*R*,7*R*,8*S*,9*S*,10*R*,11*R*,13*R*,15*R*,15a*R*)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2*H*-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-*d*]oxazole-2,6,14(1*H*,7*H*)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3*a*,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-*O*-methylloxime (12) (15 mmol) in 60mL HOAc was added NaHB(OAc)<sub>3</sub> (11.1g, 52.5 mmol) at 25°C. After 2h, the reaction was poured into 130g sodium carbonate in 700mL water and 400mL EtOAc. The water layer was removed, the organics were washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to leave 13.3g of (13).

20 Example 8:

(3a*S*,4*R*,7*R*,8*S*,9*S*,10*R*,11*R*,13*R*,15*R*,15a*R*)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2*H*-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-*d*]oxazole-2,6,14(1*H*,7*H*)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3*a*,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-*O*-methylloxime (13)

[0123] (*R/S*)-3-(4-pyridin-3-yl-imidazol-1-yl)-butan-1-al (1.5 mmol) is dissolved in 15mL HOAc and 2',4"-Bis-*O*-acetyl-9-deoxo-9-methoxyimino-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-*O*-desosaminyl-6-*O*-methylerythonolide A, 11,12-carbamate (10) (1 mmol) is added. After 1h, NaHB(OAc)<sub>3</sub> (10 mmol) is added at 25°C. After 2h, the reaction is poured into sodium carbonate in water and EtOAc. The water layer is removed, the organics are washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* to leave (13).

Example 9:

35 (3a*S*,4*R*,7*R*,8*S*,9*S*,10*R*,11*R*,13*R*,15*R*,15a*R*)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2*H*-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-*d*]oxazole-2,6,8,14(1*H*,7*H*,9*H*)-tetraone 4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3*a*,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-*O*-methylloxime (14)

[0124] To (3a*S*,4*R*,7*R*,8*S*,9*S*,10*R*,11*R*,13*R*,15*R*,15a*R*)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2*H*-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-*d*]oxazole-2,6,14(1*H*,7*H*)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3*a*,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-*O*-methylloxime (13) (3.65g, 4.06 mmol) in 40mL methylene chloride and 8mL DMSO at -7°C was added TFAA (1.13mL, 8.11 mmol). The reaction was stirred for 45 min and triethylamine (2.3mL, 16.2 mmol) was added. The reaction was warmed to 25°C and stirred 1h. 200mL EtOAc was added and the solution was washed with brine three times, satd. sodium carbonate once, and brine once, then dried over sodium sulfate. The organics were concentrated *in vacuo* to provide 3.71g of (14).

Example 10:

50 (3a*S*,4*R*,7*R*,8*S*,9*S*,10*R*,11*R*,13*R*,15*R*,15a*R*)-10-[[3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2*H*-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-*d*]oxazole-2,6,,8,14(1*H*,7*H*,9*H*)-tetraone 4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3*a*,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-*O*-methylloxime (15)

[0125] 1.0g (3a*S*,4*R*,7*R*,8*S*,9*S*,10*R*,11*R*,13*R*,15*R*,15a*R*)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2*H*-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-*d*]oxazole-2,6,,8,14(1*H*,7*H*,9*H*)-tetraone 4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3*a*,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-*O*-methylloxime (14) was dissolved in 8mL methanol and catalytic potassium carbonate was added. The reaction was stirred for 18h, then concentrated to provide 0.97g material.

Example 11:

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[(3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,8,14(1H,7H)-tetraone 4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (15)

5 [0126] To (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (13) (1 mmol) in methylene chloride and DMSO at -7°C will be added TFAA (4 mmol). The reaction will be stirred for 45 min and triethylamine (8 mmol) will be added. The reaction will be warmed to 25°C and stirred 1h. EtOAc will be added and the solution will be washed with brine three times, satd. sodium carbonate once, and brine once, then dried over sodium sulfate. The organics will be concentrated *in vacuo* to provide (15).

Example 12:

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (13)

20 [0127] To 0.555g (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (13) (0.62 mmol) in 4mL methylene chloride was added 0.2mL Ac<sub>2</sub>O (2.1 mmol). After 10 min, the reaction was poured into satd. sodium carbonate and extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organics were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide 0.51g of material.

Example 13:

10,11-anhydro-2',4"-bis-O-acetyl-12-O-imidazoylcarbonyl-6-O-methylerythromycin A (5)

30 [0128] To a dried vessel under nitrogen atmosphere is charged THF. 2',4"-bis-O-acetyl-6-O-methylerythromycin A (1) (1 mol) is added followed by CDI (5 mol) and DBU (3 mol). The reaction is heated to 45-50°C for 2.5 hours. The reaction is assayed for complete conversion to 10,11-anhydro-2',4"-bis-O-acetyl-12-O-imidazoylcarbonyl-6-O-methylerythromycin A (5). Upon completion, the reaction is cooled to 25°C and water is added. The aqueous layer is separated, and the organic solvents is removed *in vacuo*. The products 5 is then isolated.

Example 14:

40 (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-8-[[4-O-Acetyl-2,6-dideoxy-3-C-methyl-3-O-methyl- $\alpha$ -L-ribo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-10-[[2-O-acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione (17)

45 [0129] To a solution of 10,11-anhydro-2',4"-bis-O-acetyl-12-O-imidazoylcarbonyl-6-O-methylerythromycin A (5) in THF is added 1.0 equivalents of 3-[1-[(1R)-3-hydrazino-1-methylpropyl]-1H-imidazol-4-ylpyridine (16) in THF. The reaction is stirred at room temperature and assayed for completeness. If the reaction is producing 18 and not 17, a base such as KOtBu is added. Upon completion, the reaction is quenched with water, EtOAc is added, and the water layer is separated. The EtOAc and THF is removed *in vacuo* and the product (17) is isolated.

Example 15:

55 (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-8-[[4-O-Acetyl-2,6-dideoxy-3-C-methyl-3-O-methyl- $\alpha$ -L-ribo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-

imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-10-[[2-O-acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione (17)

[0130] To a dried vessel under nitrogen atmosphere is charged THF. 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-6-O-methylerythromycin A (1) (1 mol) is added followed by CDI (5 mol) and DBU (3 mol). The reaction is heated to 45-50°C for 2.5 hours. The reaction is assayed for complete conversion to acylimidazole 5. Upon completion, the reaction is cooled to 25°C and water is added. After the reaction is finished, 3-[1-[(1*R*)-3-hydrazino-1-methylpropyl]-1*H*-imidazol-4-ylpyridine (16) (1 mol) is added. The reaction is stirred and assayed for completeness. EtOAc and water is added, and the layers separated and the water layer removed. The EtOAc and THF is removed *in vacuo* and the product (17) is isolated.

10

Example 16:

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione (19)

15

[0131] To a reactor is charged methanol and 12N HCl (5 mol). The temperature is set at 30°C and (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-8-[[4-O-Acetyl-2,6-dideoxy-3-C-methyl-3-O-methyl- $\alpha$ -L-*ribo*-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-10-[[2-O-acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione (17) (1 mol) is added. The reaction is stirred to dissolve the solids, then it is heated to 45°C until complete. Once the reaction is complete, the methanol is removed *in vacuo*, and the internal temperature is set at 20°C. The reaction is extracted between sodium carbonate (6 mol) in water and EtOAc. The aqueous layer is separated, and the organic layer is concentrated to low volume. The product (19) is then isolated.

25

Example 17:

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino-14-O-methyloxime (13)

30

[0132] To a dried reactor under nitrogen atmosphere is charged isopropanol, (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione (19) (1 mol), and MeONH<sub>3</sub>Cl (10 mol) at room temperature. The reaction is heated to 83°C until the reaction is complete. The reaction is cooled to 25°C and EtOAc is charged. A solution of Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (10 mol) in water is slowly added. The pH of the aqueous layer is >9 after the addition is complete. The layers are allowed to settle for 30min, then separated. The organics is removed *in vacuo* and the product (13) is isolated.

40

Example 18:

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino-14-O-methyloxime (13)

45

[0133] To a dried reactor under nitrogen atmosphere is charged isopropanol, (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-8-[[4-O-Acetyl-2,6-dideoxy-3-C-methyl-3-O-methyl- $\alpha$ -L-*ribo*-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-4-ethyldecahydro-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3*R*)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-10-[[2-O-acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione (17) (1 mol), and MeONH<sub>3</sub>Cl (10 mol) at room temperature. The reaction is heated to 83°C until the reaction is complete. The reaction is cooled to 25°C and EtOAc is charged. A solution of Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (10 mol) in water is slowly added. The pH of the aqueous layer is >9 after the addition is complete. The layers are allowed to settle for 30min, then separated. The organics is removed *in vacuo* and the product is isolated.

55

Example 19(R/S)-3-(4-pyridin-3-yl-imidazol-1-yl)-butan-1-al (11)

- 5 [0134] To a stirred solution of 1.55mL crotonaldehyde (17.1 mmol) in 9mL of ethanol was added 2.1mL (36 mmol) acetic acid and 2.61g (18 mmol) 3-(1(3)H-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine. The reaction was stirred for 48 hours, then extracted between ethyl acetate and 1/1 satd. sodium carbonate/brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in-vacuo* to yield 3.49g of the aldehyde as a mixture of aldehyde and its ethyl hemiacetal, and its hemi-hydrate.

Example 203-(1(3)H-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine (20)

- 15 [0135] A slurry of 5g (18 mmol) 3-( $\alpha$ -bromoacetyl)-pyridine hydrobromide in 50mL formamide was heated to 180°C for 8 hours. The reaction was cooled to room temperature, diluted with sodium bicarbonate, saturated with sodium chloride, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, concentrated *in-vacuo*, and the product was taken up in acetone and hydrochloric acid in dioxane was added. The product 20 was filtered and isolated as its bis-hydrochloric acid salt in 88% (3.4g).

Example 213-(1(3)H-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine (20)

- 25 [0136] 1-trityl-4-iodoimidazole (7.4kg, 17 mol) was dissolved in 55L tetrahydrofuran, and ethylmagnesium bromide (20L, 0.95M in methyl-butylether) was added over 20 min at 25°C and the reaction was stirred for 1.5 hours. Zinc chloride (2.75kg, 20.3 mol) was added and the reaction was again stirred for 1.5 hours. 3-bromopyridine (1.7L, 17.2 mol) was added, followed by tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (84g). The reaction was heated to 70°C for 12 hours, then cooled to 0°C and the solids were filtered. The solids were suspended in dichloromethane and ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) and 30% sodium hydroxide in water was added to adjust the pH to 8. The layers were separated, more EDTA was added, and the procedure was repeated twice more. The organic layer was then washed with water, and concentrated to 5L. The solids were filtered to give 3.3kg of 1-trityl-4-(3-pyridino)imidazole. This solid was dissolved in ethanol (33L), heated to 50C, and 3.5L concentrated hydrochloric acid was added over 15 minutes. The reaction was stirred for 1.5 hours, then cooled to 0°C and the solids were filtered. The filter cake was slurried in methyl-butylether and filtered to provide 1.77kg of product (20) as its bis hydrochloric acid salt (8.2 mol, 48%).

Example 223-(1(3)H-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine (20)

- 40 [0137] To potassium acetate (370mg) and formamidine acetate (720mg) in 5mL dimethylformamide was added 3-( $\alpha$ -bromoacetyl)-pyridine hydrobromide (270mg) and the reaction was heated to 65C. The reaction was stirred for 24 hours, then cooled to room temperature.

Example 23:3-(1(3)H-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine (20)

- 50 [0138] To a degassed solution of KOH (4 mmol) and tetrabutylammonium iodide in DMF is added tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.05 mmol), 1-trityl-4-iodoimidazole (1.5 mmol), and diethyl-3-pyridylborane, and the reaction is refluxed for 24 hours. The reaction is concentrated, and the residue is partitioned between sodium hydroxide basified brine and ethyl acetate. The organic layer is dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated. The residue is dissolved in ethanol, heated to 50C, and concentrated hydrochloric acid is added. The reaction is stirred for 1.5 hours, then cooled to 0°C and the solids are filtered. The filter cake is slurried in methyl-butylether and filtered to provide the product (20) as its bis hydrochloric acid salt.

Example 243(R)-1-tertbutyldimethylsiloxy-3-butanol (28)

5 [0139] To a solution of 3(R)-1,3-butandiol (27) (29.3g, 325 mmol) and imidazole (14.4g, 211 mmol) in 150mL dichloromethane was added a solution of tertbutyldimethylsilyl chloride (24.5g, 162 mmol) in 50mL dichloromethane at 0°C over 1h. The reaction was stirred for an additional 15 min, then washed 3 times with water, the organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo to provide 32.5 g of material.

10 Example 253(R)-1-tertbutyldimethylsiloxy-3-mesyloxybutane (29)

15 [0140] To a solution of 3(R)-1-tertbutyldimethylsiloxy-3-butanol (28) (20.5g, 100 mmol) and triethylamine (16.7mL, 120 mmol) in 200mL dichloromethane was added mesyl chloride (8.5mL, 110 mmol) at 0C. The reaction was warmed to 25°C and stirred for 1 hour. The reaction was rinsed 3 times with water, then dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo to provide 27.7g of material.

20 Example 263-[1-[(1R)-3-tertbutyldimethylsiloxy-1-methylpropyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-pyridine (30)

25 [0141] To a solution of 3(R)-1-tertbutyldimethylsiloxy-3-mesyloxybutane (29) (4.14g, 14.7 mmol) and 3-(1(3)H-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine bishydrochloride (20) (3.52g, 16 mmol) in 40mL of dimethylformamide was added 2.0g sodium hydride (51 mmol). The reaction was heated to 80°C for 18h. To the reaction was added tertbutyldimethylsilyl chloride (4.0g, 26.4 mmol) and imidazole (1.9g, 27.9 mmol). The reaction was stirred an additional 1h, then quenched with water and partitioned between ethyl acetate and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to provide 2.39g of material.

30 Example 273-[1-[(1R)-3-hydroxy-1-methylpropyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-pyridine (31)

35 [0142] To a solution of 3-[1-[(1R)-3-tertbutyldimethylsiloxy-1-methylpropyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-pyridine (30) (1.12g, 3.24 mmol) in 4mL tetrahydrofuran was added 4mL of 1M tetrabutylammonium fluoride, and the reaction was stirred for 10 min. Hydrochloric acid in ethanol was added, followed by isopropyl ether. The solids were collected by filtration and recrystallized from acetonitrile to provide 0.51g of product.

40 Example 28Bis(1,1-dimethylethyl) 1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]-1,2-hydrazinedicarboxylate (32)

45 [0143] To a solution of 3-[1-[(1R)-3-tertbutyldimethylsiloxy-1-methylpropyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-pyridine (31) (0.42g, 1.7 mmol) in 6mL tetrahydrofuran was added triphenylphosphine (0.49g, 1.9 mmol). The solution was cooled to 0C, and dit-butylazadicarboxylate (0.43g, 1.9 mmol) was added. The reaction was warmed to 25°C and stirred for 18h. The reaction was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water, the organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated in vacuo to yield 1.89g of material.

50 Example 29:3-[1-[(1R)-3-hydrazino-1-methylpropyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl]-pyridine (16)

55 [0144] To a solution of bis(1,1-dimethylethyl) 1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]-1,2-hydrazinedicarboxylate (32) in methanol was added 6N hydrochloric acid. The reaction was heated to 50°C and stirred 18 h.

Example 30:(1,1-dimethylethyl) 1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]hydrazone-2-carboxylate (33)

- 5 [0145] (R/S)-3-(4-pyridin-3-yl-imidazol-1-yl)-butan-1-al (11) (1 mmol) is dissolved in 10mL HOAc and t-butyl hydrazinecarboxylate (1.1 mmol) is added. After 1h, the reaction is poured into 25g sodium carbonate in 25mL water and 30mL EtOAc. The water layer is removed, the organics are washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* to leave product (33).

Example 31(1,1-dimethylethyl) 1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]-2-hydrazinecarboxylate (32)

- 10 [0146] (1,1-dimethylethyl) 1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]hydrazone-2-carboxylate (33) (1 mmol) is dissolved in 10mL HOAc and NaHB(OAc)<sub>3</sub> (5 mmol) is added at 25C. After 2h, the reaction is poured into sodium carbonate in water and EtOAc. The water layer is removed, the organics are washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* to leave the product (32).

Example 32:3-{1-[(1R)-3-hydrazino-1-methylpropyl]-1H-imidazol-4-yl}-pyridine (16)

- 15 [0147] To a solution of (1,1-dimethylethyl) 1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]-2-hydrazinecarboxylate (32) in methanol is added 6N hydrochloric acid. The reaction is heated to 50°C and stirred 18 h.

Example 33:(1,1-dimethylethyl) 1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]-2-hydrazinecarboxylate (32)

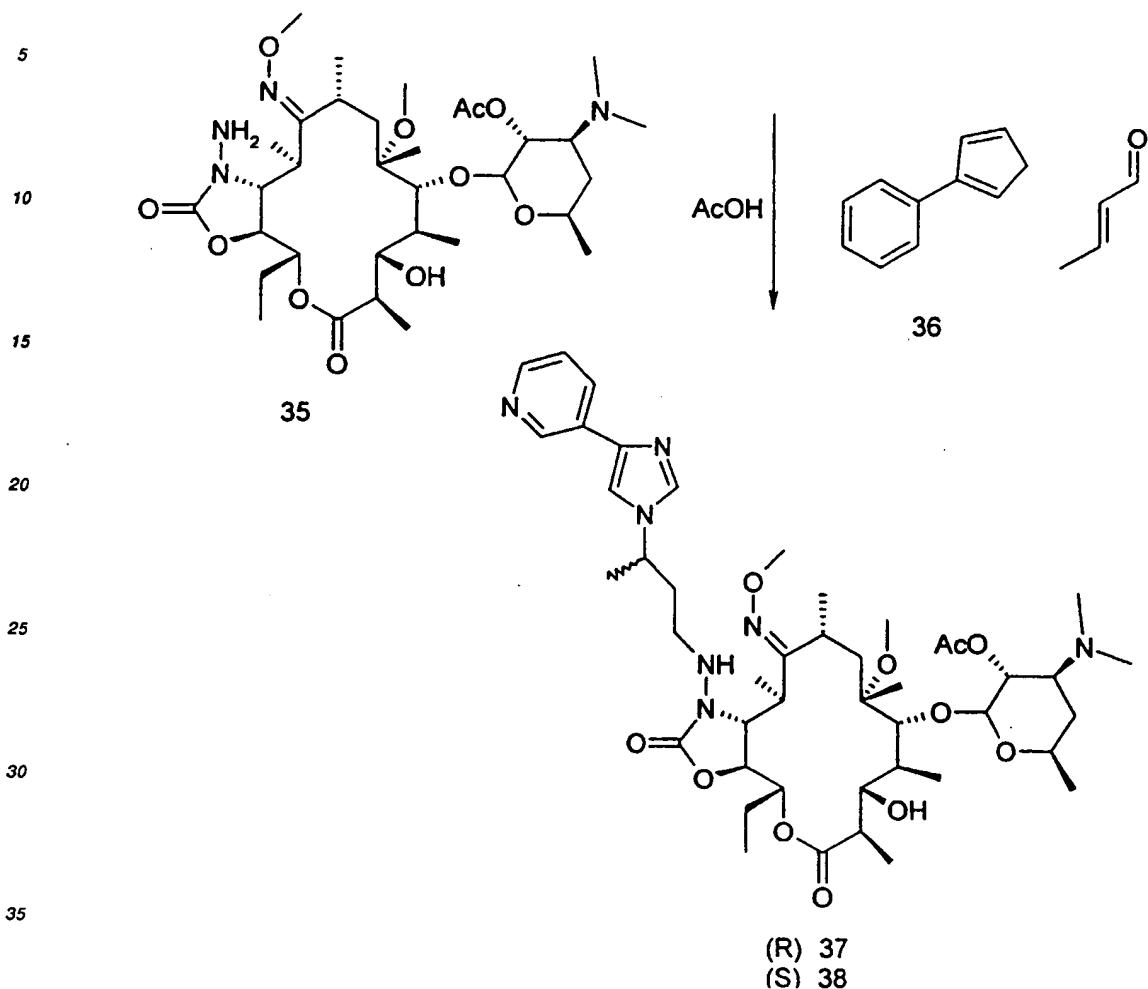
- 20 [0148] (R/S)-3-(4-pyridin-3-yl-imidazol-1-yl)-butan-1-al (11) (1 mmol) is dissolved in 10mL HOAc and t-butyl hydrazinecarboxylate (1.1 mmol) is added. After 1h, NaHB(OAc)<sub>3</sub> (5 mmol) is added at 25C. After 2h, the reaction is poured into sodium carbonate in water and EtOAc. The water layer is removed, the organics are washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* to leave the product (32).

Example 34

(3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butyl]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (13)

- 35 [0149] A 3 - necked 12 L round bottomed flask equipped with overhead stirrer, temperature probe, and nitrogen inlet was charged with 314 g (0.447 mol) of 01g 2',4"-Bis-O-acetyl-9-deoxo-9-methoxyimino-11-deoxy-11-hydrazo-5-O-des-osaminy-6-O-methylerythronolide A, 11,12-carbamate (10) and 2.5 L of methylene chloride, 0.628 L acetic acid. To the clear solution was charged 292g (1.342 mol, 3.0 equivalents) 3-(1(3)H-imidazole-4-yl)-pyridine bishydrochloride. This yellow suspension was stirred at room temperature for 5-10 minutes, then 42 mL (0.505 mol, 1.13 equivalents) of crotonaldehyde (99%) was added in one charge. The reaction slurry stirred over night at room temperature or greater than 25 hrs. The reaction was assayed for conversion to (3aS,4R,7R,8S,9S,10R,11R,13R,15R,15aR)-10-[[2-O-Acetyl-3,4,6-trideoxy-3-(dimethylamino)- $\beta$ -D-xylo-hexopyranosyl]oxy]-2H-Oxacyclotetradecino[4,3-d]oxazole-2,6,14(1H,7H)-trione 4-ethyldecahydro-8-hydroxy-11-methoxy-3a,7,9,11,13,15-hexamethyl-1-[(3R)-3-[4-(3-pyridinyl)-1H-imidazol-1-yl]butylidene]amino]-14-O-methyloxime (12). To the reaction was added 758 g (3.58 mol, 8.0 equivalents) sodium triacetoxiborohydride, temperature maintained 20-25°C. The reaction stirred 2-2.5 hrs. The reaction was cooled to less than 10°C and quenched with 2500mL city water, mild foaming and temperature increase occurred. The internal temperature was cooled to 5-10°C and the solution was basified to 8.5-9.0 using 600g sodium hydroxide pellets, internal temperature exothermed to 28°C. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with brine. The organic layer was vac. concentrated to an amber foamy solid. Weight recovery of the title compound was 91%, (367.3g).

### Example 35



[0150] To a 50 ml flask containing 14 ml of acetic acid was added a solid mixture of 1.24 g (26) and 2g (25). The mixture was stirred for 15 minutes before all solids were dissolved. Then 260 ml of crotonaldehyde was added in one portion. No temperature change were observed during addition or during the duration of the condensation. After 3 hours, tests showed no crotonaldehyde imine and 4.8 g of sodium triacetoxyborohydride was added to the reaction. The mixture was then stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours. The mixture was diluted with 50 ml of water and stirred for 30 minutes. The pH was measured at ~2. The pH was adjusted to 9 with ~19 ml of 40 % aqueous NaOH (Internal temperature went up to 35 C shortly after first addition of NaOH. The mixture was cooled in an ice water bath and the temperature was maintained below 30 C for the remainder of the pH adjustment).

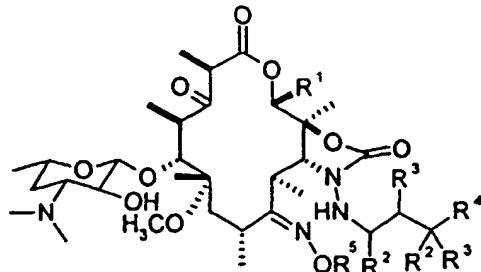
[0151] The aqueous layer was then extracted twice with methylene chloride. Then an additional extraction with methylene chloride was done but the organic layer collected separately. TLC analysis of the first two extractions versus the third showed no products extracted in the third extraction. The first two extractions were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to give 2.53 g of a crude mixture of 37 and 38 as a pale yellow solid.

## **Claims**

- 55 1. A process of preparing a compound of the formula

5

10

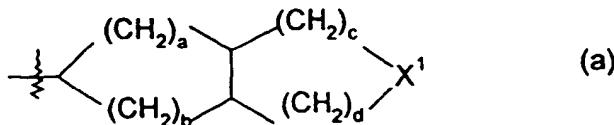


(15)

wherein:

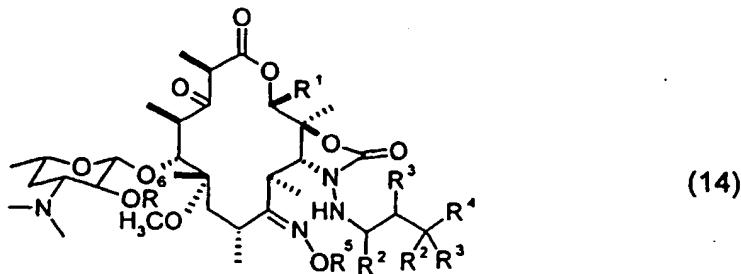
- 15 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or
- 20 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally substituted by one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below
- 25

30



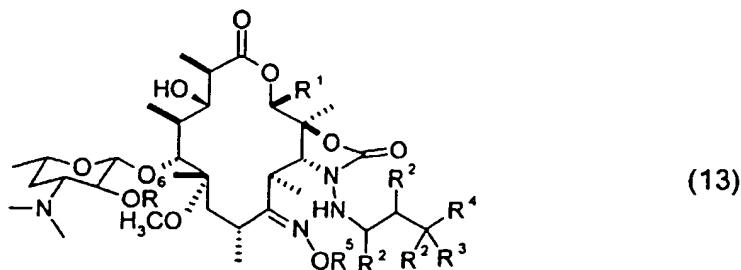
- 35 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or
- R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or
- 40 a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and
- 45 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and
- each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>;
- 55

which comprises treating a compound of the formula



wherein

- 15 R<sup>1</sup>-R<sup>5</sup> are as defined above; and  
R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; with a nucleophile to cleave the R<sup>6</sup> protecting group.
- 20 2. The reaction of claim 1 wherein cleavage of R<sup>6</sup> takes place during solvolysis in alcoholic or aqueous solvents selected from water, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, and tert-butanol with the addition of base, to accelerate the reaction, selected from sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium carbonate, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium fluoride and barium hydroxide.
- 25 3. The process according to Claim 1, wherein said compound of formula (14) is prepared by oxidizing a compound of formula

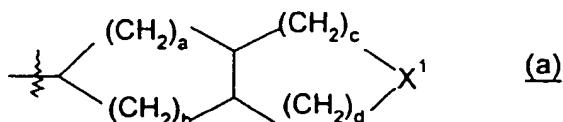


under Swern conditions

wherein:

40 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

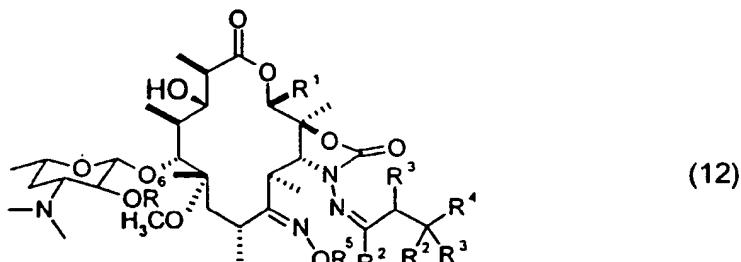
45 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
50 R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below



wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or  
 R<sup>1</sup> is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkythio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and  
 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and  
 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>,

4. The process according to Claim 3 wherein a compound of formula 13 is prepared by the reduction of a compound of formula

30



40

with a metal hydride reducing agent selected from sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride under acidic conditions,

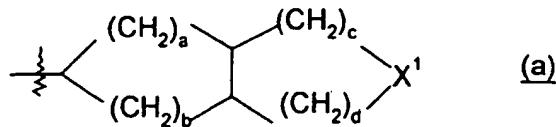
Wherein in formula (12):

45

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
 R<sup>1</sup> may be a formula (a) as shown below

55

5



wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

10  $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1-C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2-C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2-C_8$ alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3-C_8$ cycloalkyl or  $C_5-C_8$ cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1-C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2-C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2-C_8$ alkynyl,  $C_3-C_8$ cycloalkyl,  $C_5-C_8$ cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl,  $C_1-C_4$ alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

15 each  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  is independently H or  $C_1-C_6$ alkyl; and

each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6-C_{10}$ aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10})$ alkyl,  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$ aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10})$ alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and

20  $R^5$  is H or  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10})$ alkyl,  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$ aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10})$ alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and

25  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$ alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>

30

- 35 5. The process according to Claim 4 wherein said compound of Formula 12 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula

40



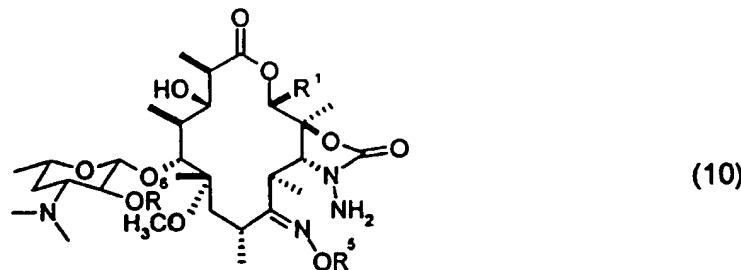
wherein:

45

$R^2$  to  $R^4$  are defined above; and,  
C and D together form oxo, or where C and D are independently hydroxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$ alkoxy or  $C_1-C_{10}$ acyloxy, with a compound of formula

50

55



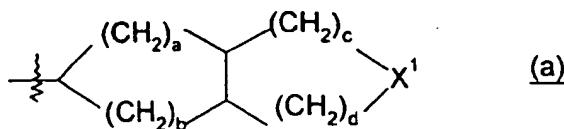
in a solvent under neutral or acidic conditions,

Wherein in formula (10):

15  $R^1$  is an alpha-branched  $C_3$ - $C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2$ - $C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3$ - $C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

20  $R^1$  is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

25  $R^1$  can be a formula (a) as shown below



wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

35  $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl,  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl,  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

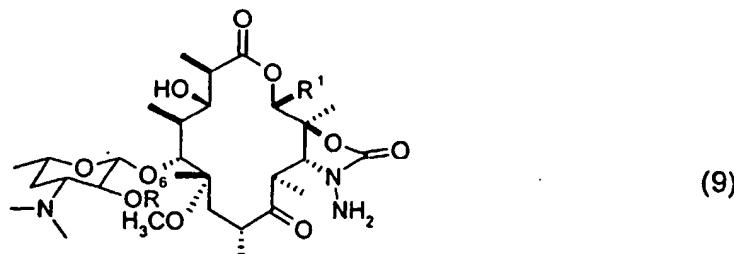
40 each  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  is independently H or  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl; and

45 each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6$ - $C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)(C_1-C_{10} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10} \text{ alkyl})$  wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and

50  $R^5$  is H or  $C_1$ - $C_{10}$  alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR², and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)(C_1-C_{10} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10} \text{ alkyl})$  wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and

55  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR².

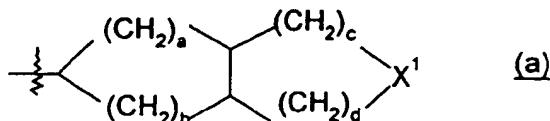
6. The process according to Claim 13 wherein compound 5 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula



wherein:

15  $R^1$  is an alpha-branched  $C_3$ - $C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2$ - $C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3$ - $C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may 20 optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or 25 halo atoms; or

$R^1$  is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  $R^1$  can be a formula (a) as shown below



35 wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ ; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

40  $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl,  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl,  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

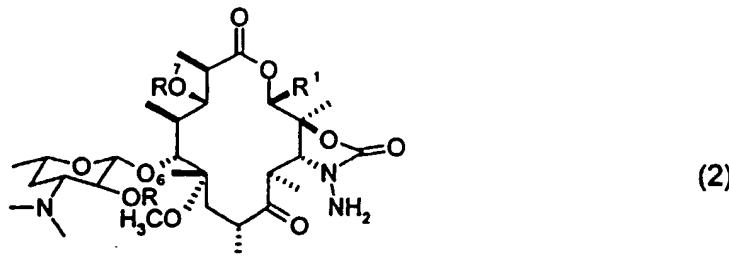
45 each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6$ - $C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl),  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup> with a reagent of the formula



wherein  $R^5$  is defined above,

as its free base or acid addition salt in polar solvents with or without added base at a temperature between about 40°C to 150°C.

7. The process according to Claim 6 wherein the compound of formula  $H_2NOR^5$  is methoxylamine hydrochloride.
8. The process according to Claim 6 wherein Compound 9 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

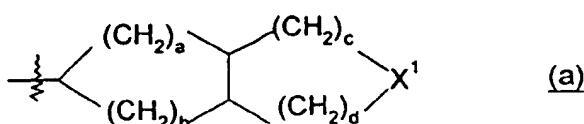


with an acid in a polar solvent, at a temperature of about -25°C to 100°C, wherein in formula (2):

**20**  $R^1$  is an alpha-branched  $C_3-C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5-C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2-C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3-C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5-C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

**25**  $R^1$  is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1-C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1-C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  $R^1$  can be a formula (a) as shown below

**30**



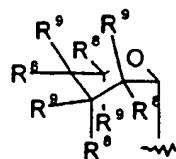
wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

**40**  $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3-C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5-C_8$  cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

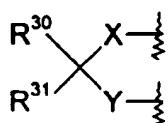
**45** each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl),  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R_4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

**50**  $R^7$  is a radical of formula

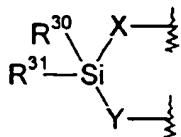
55



10 wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

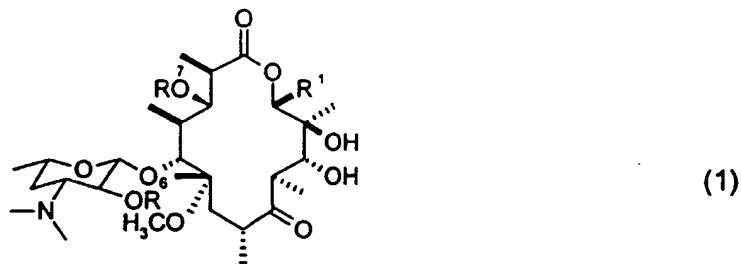


20 wherein:  
X = O or S  
Y = O or S  
25 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S  
or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form



35 and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl

9. The process according to Claim 8, wherein compound 2 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of the formula



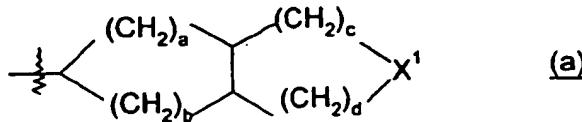
50 with a carbonyl source and base in an inert solvent, followed by treatment with hydrazine.  
Wherein in formula (1):

55 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

EP 1 088 828 A2

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below

5



10

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

15

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or 9substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

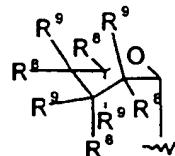
20

each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

25

R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

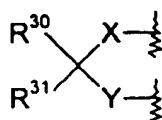
35



40

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and, R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

45



50

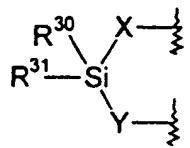
wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

55

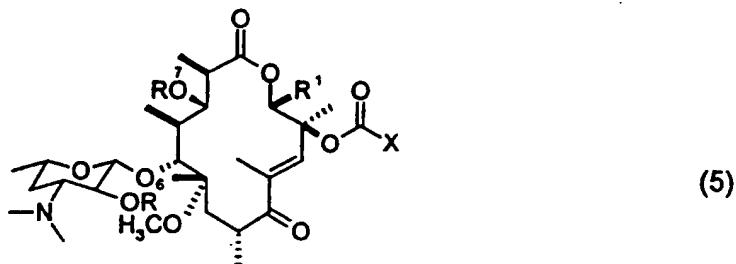
R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form



and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl.

10. 10. The process according to Claim 9 wherein the carbonyl source is selected from carbonyldiimidazole (CDI), phosgene, triphosgene, carbonyl bisbenzotriazole, carbonyl bishydroxybenzotriazole, and carbonyl bis-1,2,4-triazole.
11. 11. The process according to Claim 9 wherein said reaction is monitored for the formation of an intermediate of formula

15

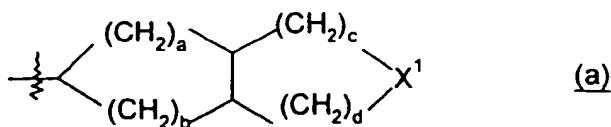


25

wherein:

30. R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or
35. R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below

40



45

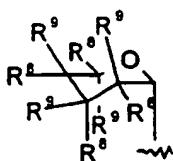
wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

50. R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

5

each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

10

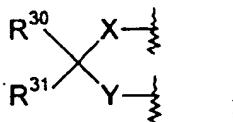


15

20

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

25



30

wherein:

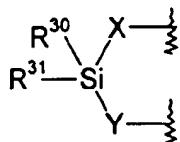
X = O or S

Y = O or S

R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

35

40



each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, and X is imidazole, 1,2,4-triazole, hydroxybenzotriazole, or benzotriazole.

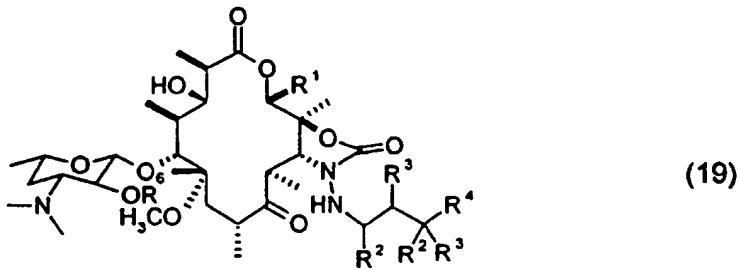
45

12. The process according to Claim 11 wherein when intermediate compound (5) is formed, hydrazine or hydrazine hydrate is added to the reaction between about -78°C and 50°C.

50

13. The process according to Claim 3 wherein a compound of formula 13 is produced by the reaction of a compound of formula

55

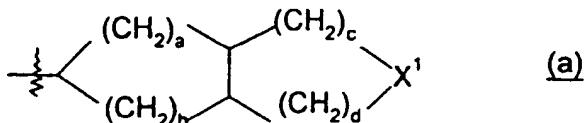


wherein:

15  $R^1$  is an alpha-branched  $C_3$ - $C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2$ - $C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3$ - $C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

20  $R^1$  is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  $R^1$  can be a formula (a) as shown below

25



30

wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

35  $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl,  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl,  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

40 each  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  is independently H or  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl; and  
each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6$ - $C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)(C_1-C_{10} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10} \text{ alkyl})$  wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

45 with a reagent of the formula

55

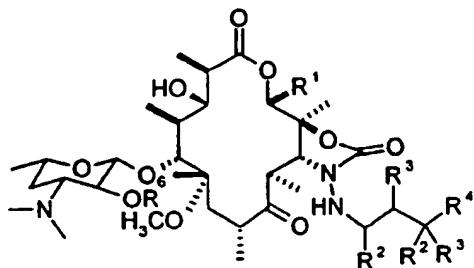


wherein  $R^5$  is defined above.

as its free base or in acid addition salt form, with or without a base in a polar solvent at a temperature between

5

10



(19)

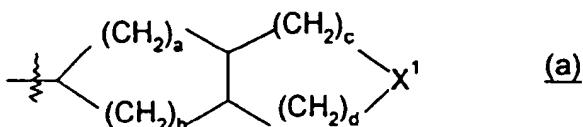
wherein:

15  $R^1$  is an alpha-branched  $C_3$ - $C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2$ - $C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3$ - $C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

20  $R^1$  is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  $R^1$  can be a formula (a) as shown below

25

30



35 wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or  
 $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$  alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$  alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3$ - $C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1$ - $C_8$  alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$  alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$  alkynyl,  $C_3$ - $C_8$  cycloalkyl,  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

40 each  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  is independently H or  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl; and  
each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6$ - $C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl),  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and  
50  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, with a reagent of the formula

55



wherein  $R^5$  is defined above,  
as its free base or in acid addition salt form, with or without a base in a polar solvent at a temperature between

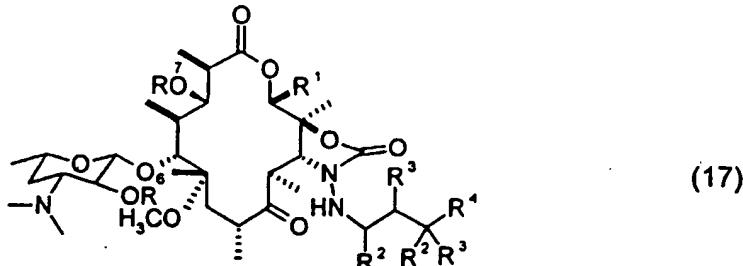
about 40°C to 150°C.

14. The process according to claim 13 wherein the compound of formula 19 is reacted with methoxylamine hydrochloride.

5

15. The process according to claim 13 wherein a compound of 19 is prepared by the reaction of a compound of formula

10



20

wherein:

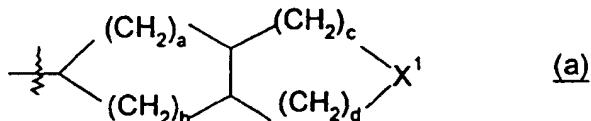
25

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

30

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below

35



40

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

45

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

50

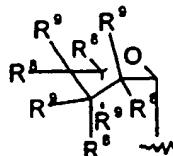
each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and  
each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be

EP 1 088 828 A2

optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

5

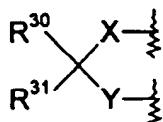
10



15

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

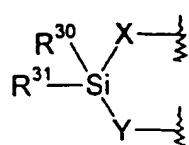
20



25

wherein:  
X = O or S  
Y = O or S  
R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

30



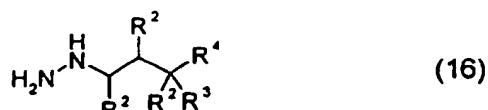
35

and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl,  
with acid in a polar solvent at a temperature of about -25°C to 100°C.

40

16. The process according to Claim 15 wherein the compound of formula 17 is prepared by the reaction of compound

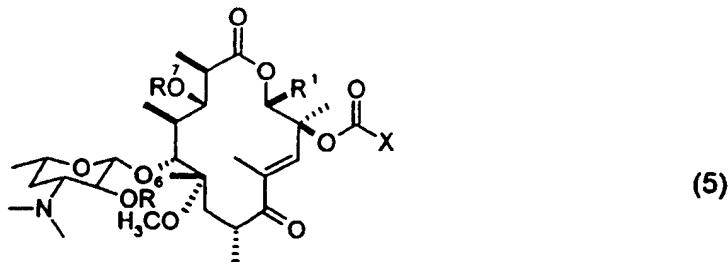
45



50

in an inert solvent at a temperature of about 0°C to 150°C, j b  
with a compound of the formula

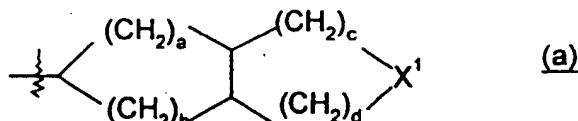
55



in an inert solvent at a temperature of about 0°C to 150°C.

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

20 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below



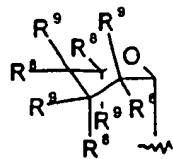
wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

35 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

40 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>

45 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

55 R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula



10 wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)HNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

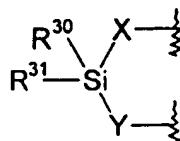


20

wherein:

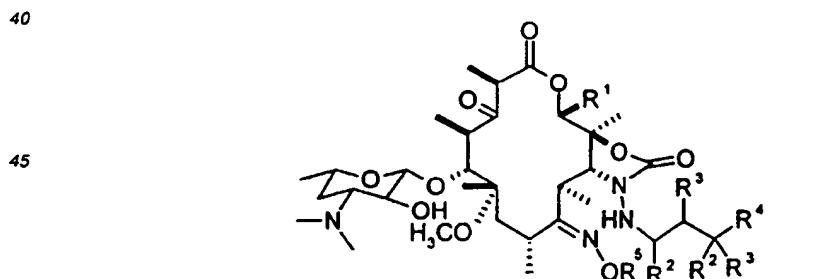
X = O or S

Y = O or S

25 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

35 and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, and X is imidazole, 1,2,4-triazole, hydroxybenzotriazole, or benzotriazole.

## 17. A process of preparing a compound of the formula



50

wherein:

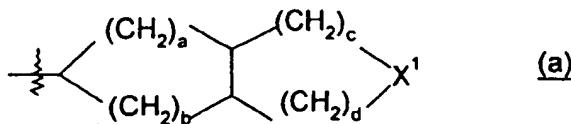
R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or

halo atoms; or

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below

5

10



wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

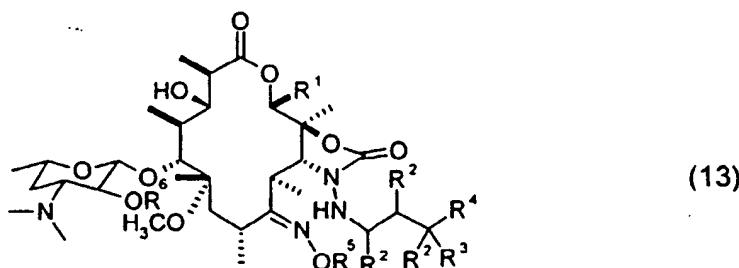
each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl; and

each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>;

which comprises oxidizing a compound of formula (13) under Swern conditions

40

45

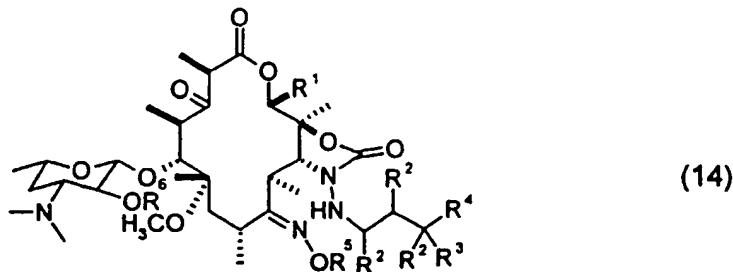


wherein

R<sup>1</sup>-R<sup>5</sup> are as defined above; and  
R<sup>6</sup> is H.

18. The process according to Claim 17 wherein (a) dimethylsulfoxide is activated with an activating agent selected from oxalyl chloride, trifluoroacetic anhydride, sulfonyl chloride and thionyl chloride followed by addition of compound 13 in an inert solvent selected from dichloromethane, dichloroethane and tetrachloroethane; and (b) trialkylamine base is added after a time interval between about 5 minutes and 24 hours at a temperature range from about -80°C to 50°C.

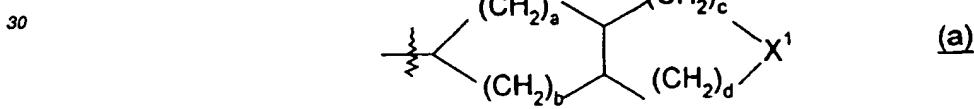
19. A compound of the formula



15 wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a)



35 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> can not both be H when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be

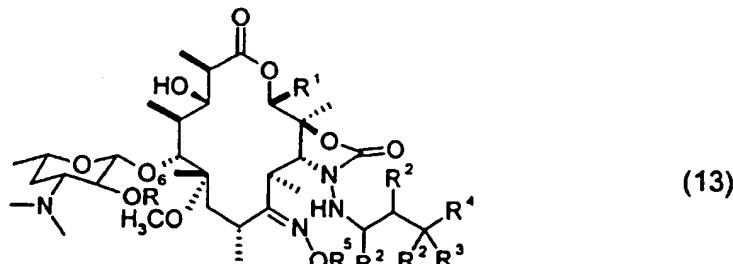
optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

20. A compound of the formula

5

10

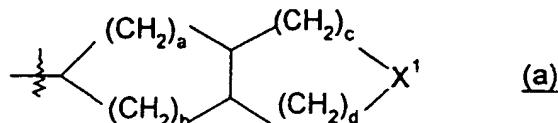
15



wherein:

- R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or
- R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or
- R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a) as shown below

30



35

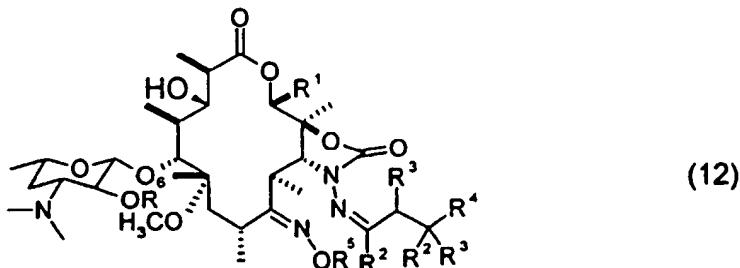
- wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or
- R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and
- each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> can not both be H when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and
- each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and
- R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and

R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

21. The invention also relates to a compound of the formula

5

10

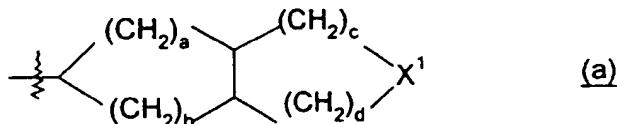


15

wherein:

- 20 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or
- 25 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a formula (a) as shown below
- 30

35

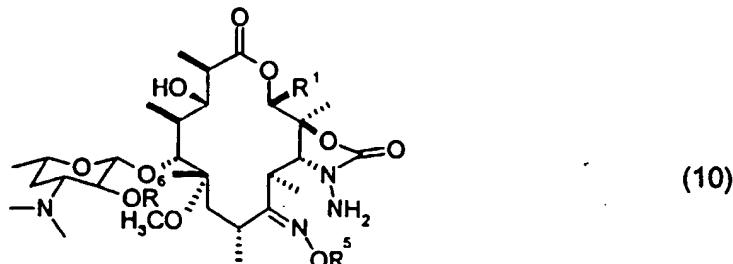


- 35 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or
- 40 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and
- 45 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> can not both be H when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>; and each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>5</sup> is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of —C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to
- 50
- 55

10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and  
 R<sup>6</sup> is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

5

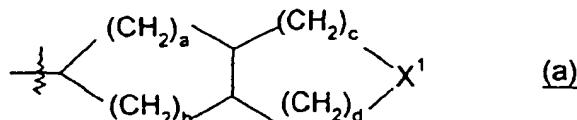
## 22. A compound of the formula



wherein:

20 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched  $C_3-C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5-C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2-C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3-C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5-C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

25 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1-C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1-C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  
 R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a)



40 where X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

45 R<sup>1</sup> is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H,  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3-C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5-C_8$  cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is  $C_1-C_8$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_8$  alkynyl,  $C_3-C_8$  cycloalkyl,  $C_5-C_8$  cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1-C_4$  alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms except that R<sup>1</sup> can not be  $-CH_2CH_3$ ; and each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl; and

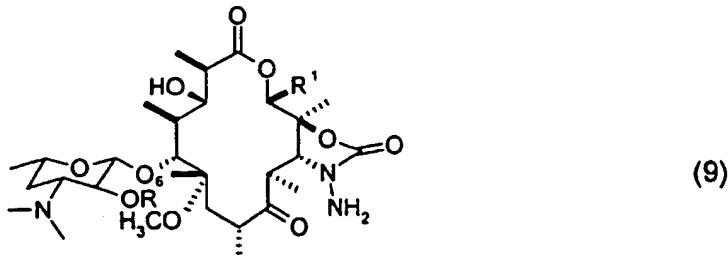
50 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl),  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and R<sup>5</sup> is H or  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl, wherein 1 to 3 carbons of said alkyl are optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, and said alkyl group is optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected

from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkyl})$ ,  $C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkoxy}$ ,  $C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkanoyl}$ , halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6\text{-}C_{10}\text{ aryl}$ ,  $C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkyl}$ ,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkyl})$  wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and

5  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1\text{-}C_{18}\text{ alkanoyl}$ , wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

## 23. A compound of the formula

10



15

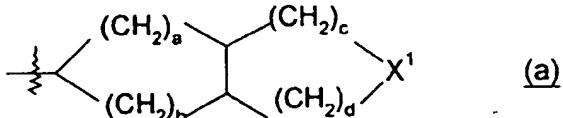
20 wherein:

25  $R^1$  is an alpha-branched  $C_3\text{-}C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5\text{-}C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2\text{-}C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3\text{-}C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5\text{-}C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

30

$R^1$  is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or  $R^1$  can be a compound of formula (a)

35



40

wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

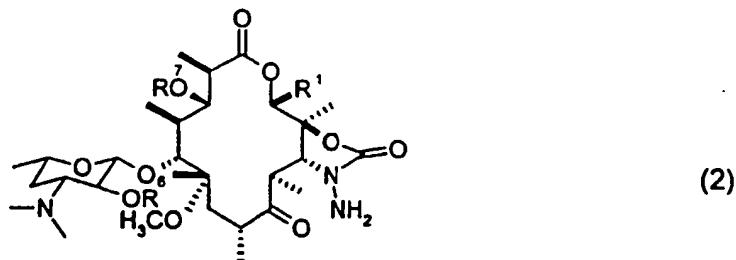
45

$R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1\text{-}C_8$  alkyl,  $C_2\text{-}C_8$  alkenyl,  $C_2\text{-}C_8$  alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3\text{-}C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5\text{-}C_8$  cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1\text{-}C_8$  alkyl,  $C_2\text{-}C_8$  alkenyl,  $C_2\text{-}C_8$  alkynyl,  $C_3\text{-}C_8$  cycloalkyl,  $C_5\text{-}C_8$  cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1\text{-}C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms except  $R^1$  can not be  $-CH_2CH_3$ ; and,

50

each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6\text{-}C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkyl})$ ,  $C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkoxy}$ ,  $C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkanoyl}$ , halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6\text{-}C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkyl}$ ,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1\text{-}C_{10}\text{ alkyl})$  wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and,  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1\text{-}C_{18}\text{ alkanoyl}$ , wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

## 24. A compound of the formula

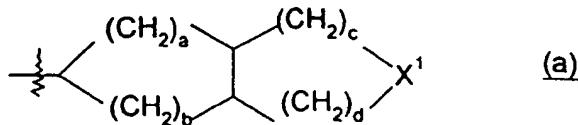


15 wherein:

15  $R^1$  is an alpha-branched  $C_3$ - $C_8$  alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched  $C_2$ - $C_5$  alkyl group; a  $C_3$ - $C_8$  cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$  cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

20  $R^1$  is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkoxy and  $C_1$ - $C_4$  alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

25  $R^1$  can be a compound of formula (a)



35 wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

40  $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is  $H$ ,  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl or  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1$ - $C_8$ alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_8$ alkynyl,  $C_3$ - $C_8$ cycloalkyl,  $C_5$ - $C_8$ cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1$ - $C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

45 each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6$ - $C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl),  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6$ - $C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ , and  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and

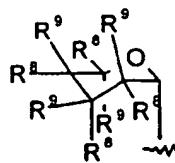
50  $R^6$  is  $H$ ,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR²; and

$R^7$  is a radical of formula

55

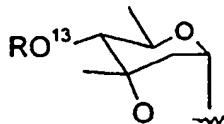
EP 1 088 828 A2

5



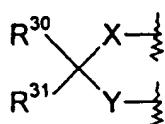
10 wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; except when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>7</sup> can not be a radical of the formula

15



20 wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and  
R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

25



30

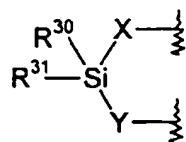
wherein:

X = O or S

Y = O or S

35 R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

40

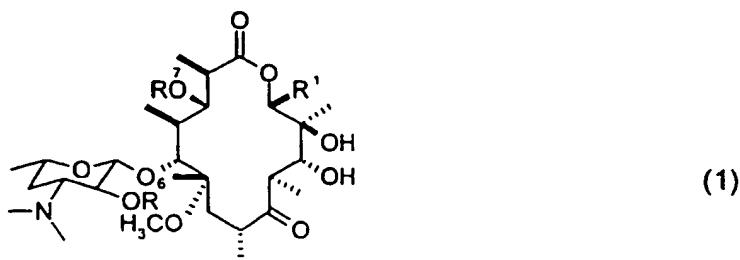


45

and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl.

25. A compound of the formula

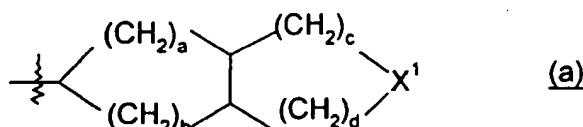
50



wherein:

- 5 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or
- 10 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a)

15



20

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-, a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

25

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

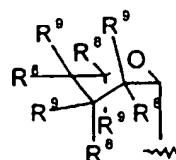
30

each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

40

R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

45

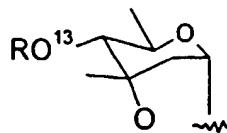


50

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup> except when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>7</sup> can not be a radical of the formula

55

5

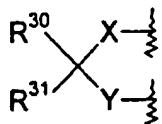


wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

10

15



20

wherein:

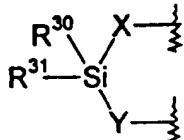
X = O or S

Y = O or S

R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

25

30

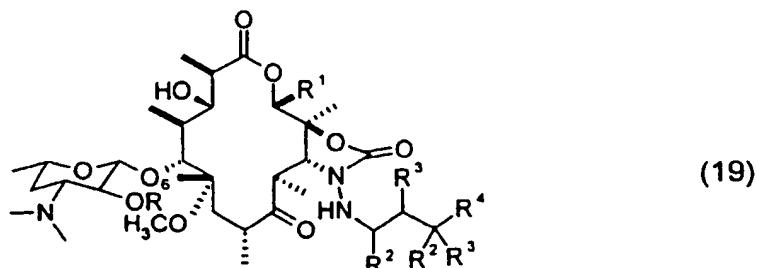


and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl.

35 26. A compound of the formula

40

45

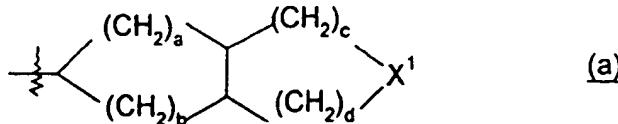


wherein:

50 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

55 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or

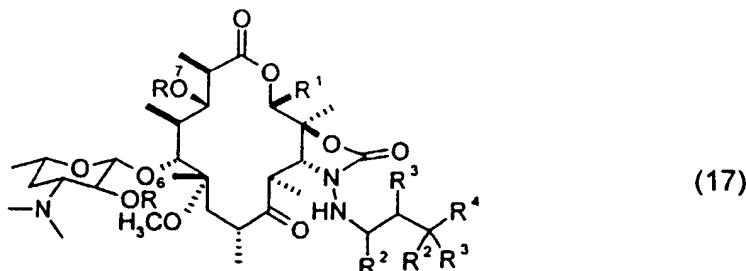
R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a)



10 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>-; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or  
 R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkythio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and  
 each R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> is independently H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl except when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> both of R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> can not be H; and  
 25 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and  
 30 R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

27. A compound of formula

35

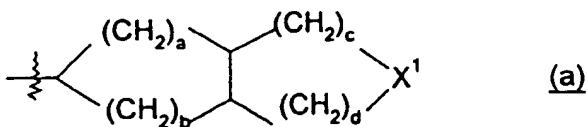


40

45 wherein:

50 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or  
 55 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a)

5



wherein  $X^1$  is O, S or  $-CH_2-$ , a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and  $a + b + c + d \leq 5$ ; or

10  $R^1$  is  $CH_2R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{24}$  is H,  $C_1-C_6$ alkyl,  $C_2-C_6$ alkenyl,  $C_2-C_6$ alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a  $C_3-C_6$ cycloalkyl or  $C_5-C_8$ cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

15 a group of the formula  $SR^{23}$  wherein  $R^{23}$  is  $C_1-C_6$ alkyl,  $C_2-C_6$ alkenyl,  $C_2-C_6$ alkynyl,  $C_3-C_8$ cycloalkyl,  $C_5-C_8$ cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl,  $C_1-C_4$ alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three  $C_1-C_4$ alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

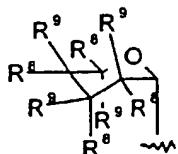
20 each  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  is independently H or  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl; and

each  $R^4$  is independently  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocyclic groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of  $-C(O)O(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl),  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkoxy,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl,  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $-NR^2R^3$ ,  $-S(O)_n(C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and  $SO_2NR^2R^3$ ; and  $R^6$  is H,  $-C(O)R^4$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

25  $R^7$  is a radical of formula

30

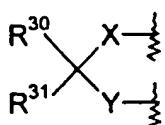
35



wherein each  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are independently hydrogen, hydroxy,  $C_1-C_6$  alkoxy,  $-OC(O)R^4$ ,  $-OC(O)NNH_2$ ,  $-OSi(R^{10})_3$ , or  $C_1-C_{18}$  O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

40  $R^8$  &  $R^9$  may be taken together to form

45



50

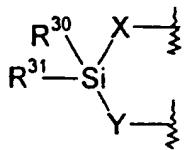
wherein:

$X = O$  or  $S$

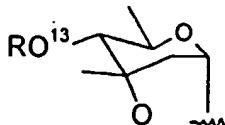
$Y = O$  or  $S$

$R^{30}$ , and  $R^{31} = H$ ,  $C_1-C_6$  alkyl,  $C_6-C_{10}$  aryl, or  $R^{30}$  and  $R^{31}$  taken together form =O or =S or  $R^8$  &  $R^9$  can be taken together to form

55



and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl;  
with the proviso that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> and R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are each independently H, than R<sup>7</sup> can not be a  
radical of the formula

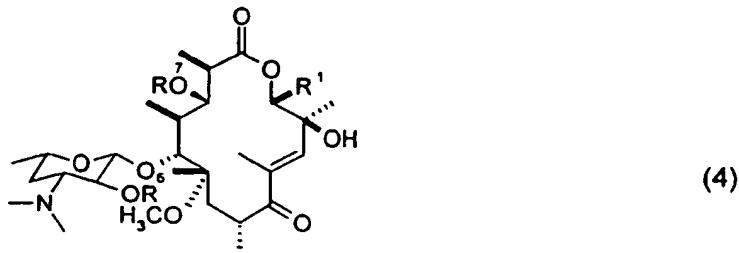


wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>.

20

25

28. A compound of the formula



35

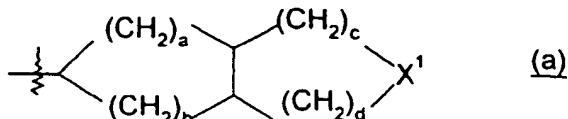
wherein:

40

R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

45

R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a) as shown below



55

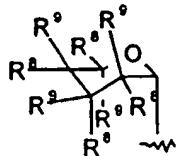
wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or

alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either of which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>balkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

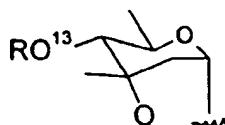


20

25

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NHNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub>O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>, except that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> R<sup>7</sup> can not be a radical of the formula

30

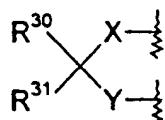


35

wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and

R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

40



45

wherein:

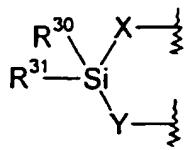
50

X = O or S

Y = O or S

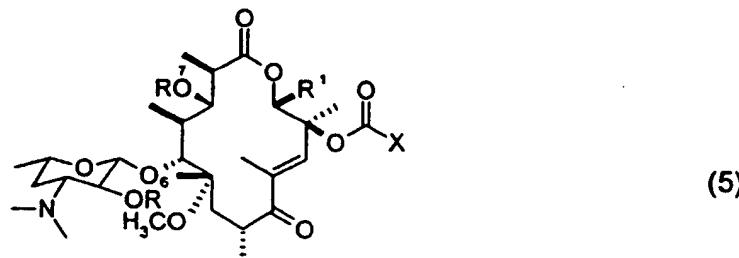
R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S or R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

55



and each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl.

10 29. A compound of the formula

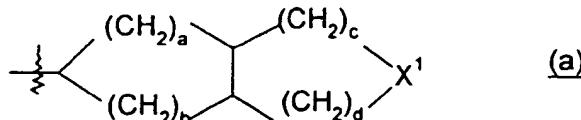


wherein:

25 R<sup>1</sup> is an alpha-branched C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl group any of which may optionally be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups; a C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkylalkyl group wherein the alkyl group is an alpha-branched C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>5</sub> alkyl group; a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl group, either of which may optionally be substituted by methyl or one to three groups independently selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, and halo; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl groups or halo atoms; or

30 R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl which may be optionally replaced with one to three groups independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio groups, halogen atoms, hydroxyl groups, trifluoromethyl, and cyano; or R<sup>1</sup> can be a compound of formula (a)

35



45 wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S or -CH<sub>2</sub>; a, b, c, and d are each independently selected from an integer ranging from 0 to 2 and a + b + c + d ≤ 5; or

R<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, alkoxyalkyl or alkylthioalkyl containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms in each alkyl, alkylthio or alkoxy group wherein any of said alkyl, alkoxy, alkenyl or alkynyl groups may be substituted by one to three hydroxyl groups or by one to three halo atoms; or a C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl or C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl either or which may be optionally replaced by methyl or one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; or a group of the formula SR<sup>23</sup> wherein R<sup>23</sup> is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>alkynyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>5</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>cycloalkenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl wherein the substituent is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy or halo, or a 3 to 6 membered oxygen or sulphur-containing heterocyclic ring which may be saturated, or fully or partially unsaturated and which may optionally be substituted by one to three C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkyl groups or halo atoms; and

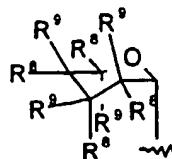
55 each R<sup>4</sup> is independently C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl or 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, wherein said aryl and heterocycle groups are optionally replaced by 1 to 3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of -C

EP 1 088 828 A2

(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkanoyl, halo, nitro, cyano, 5 to 10 membered heterocycle, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, -NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>, -S(O)<sub>n</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl) wherein n is an integer ranging from 0 to 2, and SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>3</sup>; and R<sup>6</sup> is H, -C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of formula

5

10

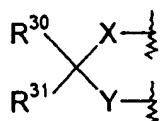


15

wherein each R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -OC(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -OC(O)NNH<sub>2</sub>, -OSi(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> O-alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup>; and R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> may be taken together to form

20

25



wherein:

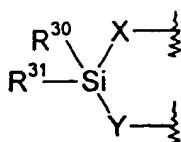
X = O or S

30

Y = O or S

R<sup>30</sup>, and R<sup>31</sup> = H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, or R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> taken together form =O or =S R<sup>8</sup> & R<sup>9</sup> can be taken together to form

35



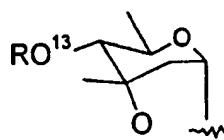
40

each R<sup>10</sup> is independently C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl or C<sub>6</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aryl, and

X is imidazole, 1,2,4-triazole, hydroxybenzotriazole, or benzotriazole, with the proviso that when R<sup>1</sup> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> and R<sup>7</sup> is a radical of the formula

45

50



wherein R<sup>13</sup> is hydrogen, C(O)R<sup>4</sup>, -Si(R<sup>10</sup>)<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>18</sub> alkanoyl, wherein one or two carbons in the alkyl portion of said alkyl or alkanoyl may be optionally replaced by a heteroatom selected from O, S, and NR<sup>2</sup> then X can not be imidazole.

55



(19)

Europäisches Patentamt  
European Patent Office  
Office européen des brevets



(11)

EP 1 088 828 A3

(12)

## EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

(88) Date of publication A3:  
11.04.2001 Bulletin 2001/15

(51) Int Cl.<sup>7</sup>: C07H 17/08, A61K 31/7048,  
A61P 31/04, A61P 33/02

(43) Date of publication A2:  
04.04.2001 Bulletin 2001/14

(21) Application number: 00308487.8

(22) Date of filing: 27.09.2000

(84) Designated Contracting States:  
AT BE CH CY DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU  
MC NL PT SE

Designated Extension States:  
AL LT LV MK RO SI

(30) Priority: 29.09.1999 US 156554 P

(71) Applicant: Pfizer Products Inc.  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)

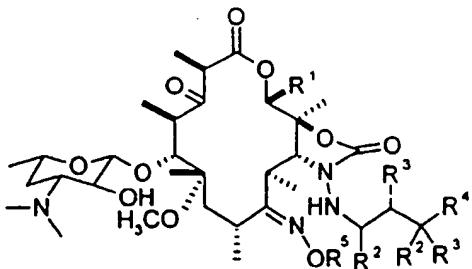
(72) Inventors:  
• Kaneko, Takushi  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)

- McLaughlin, Robert William  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)
- McMillen, William Thomas  
Fishers Indiana 46032 (US)
- Ripin, David Harold Brown  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)
- Vanerplas, Brian Clement  
Groton, Connecticut 06340 (US)

(74) Representative: McMunn, Watson Palmer et al  
Pfizer Limited  
Patents Department  
Ramsgate Road  
Sandwich, Kent CT13 9NJ (GB)

(54) Synthesis of carbamate ketolide antibiotics

(57) The invention relates to a method of preparing a macrolide antibiotic of the formula



(15)

wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup> are defined above. These antibiotics are useful as antibacterial and antiprotozoal agents in mammals, including man, as well as in fish and birds. The invention also includes novel compounds made by the preparation of the macrolide antibiotic.